Contents



- Scope & Sequence
- Exam specifications 2020
- How to write a paragraph

Module 3: Adventure

- Unit (7): How was your weekend?
- Unit (8): The amazing world around us
- Unit (9): Adventure!



Module 4: Our future

- Unit (10): Welcome to my home!
- Unit (11): On land and sea
- Unit (12): My future





- Dictation
- Homework exercises on the units
- General Exercises
- WB Practice Test
- Final Tests
- Azhar Exams
- Listening material

I went to the museum last month.

When did you go to the museum?

How was your weekend? It was

Responding to past events

I went bowling three days ago.

Questions review

Did you go to the park?

Yes, I did / No, I didn't.

Skills 7. How was your weekend?

Reading: A diary entry:

Writing: Writing a diary entry

giving your opninon about a

Listening: An Interview with

Speaking: Talking about your

weekend; discssing types of

Robinson Crusoe

fantastic day

a musician

Life Skills, Values and Issues

making; negotiation;

the opinions of others

Values: Workmanship;

Independence; respect

Issues: Civilizational

communication

self-management; respecting

appreciation; perseverance;

Past simple time expressions Life Skills: Decision-

Skills 10. Welcome to my home!

Reading: Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world Writing:

- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses Listening: A podcast about homes of the future Speaking: Saying what things are made of; predicting the future; saying years

Life Skills, Values and Issues Language

Page 34

Islare made of The sofa is made of leather. The cushions are made of cotton.

will for predictions There will be electric cars in the

We will go to the moon.

future.

listening and self-expression Values: Curiosity appreciation of science and scientists; objectivity Issues: Technological awareness; sustainable

Life Skills: Credivity -

flexibility in generating a

diversity of ideas; good

development; health and population issues

music; talking about past events great! 8. The amazing world around us

Reading: A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum Writing: A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion Listening: Facts and figures; a quiz Speaking: Talking about

Comparative and superlative adjectives Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro. The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo.

Life Skills: Respect for diversity - respecting the opinions of others; communication - good listening, self expression Issues: National unity. citizenship, loyalty and belonging

Page 2

Page 12

11. On land and sea

Reading: A text about sea life; Zero conditional a leastet about plastic pollution; If it rains, we get wet. The Old Man and the Sea Writing: Writing rules; planning must/mustn't and writing an advertisement, a paragraph explaining a beach ideas. clean-up dau Listening: A talk about a nature reserve Speaking: Talking about saving the environment; asking for and giving instructions

I feel tired when it's late. You must listen to other students' problem; analyse the parts

You mustn't make all the decisions yourself.

Page 44

Life Skills: Collaboration, sharing and productivity, set clear goals Values: Identify the of the problem; help others; self-control/resilience Issues: Environmental responsibilitu

12. My future

Module 4:

Reading: An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; an essay predicting the future Writing: A paragraph giving information about the future Listening: A description of a lob: an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans Speaking: Describing and asking questions about jobs

Review D Revision of Units 10-12

Relative pronouns with who A teacher is a person who teaches students. Question tags It isn't an easy job, is it? You don't have a brother, do you? The first conditional

If I go to university, I'll study maths. I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard.

Page 54

Life Skills: Productivity set clear goals Values: Cooperation, mercy Issues: Environmental pollution; appreciation of science and scientists: independence, technological

awareness

disagreeing 9. Adventure!

measurements; making comparisons

Giving opinions: Agreeing and

Reading: Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days Writing: A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip Listening: Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities Speaking: Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the

going to for plans I'm going to visit Sinai. We're not communication; going to go kayaking. Reflexive pronouns We enjoyed ourselves when we went sailing. He put on a hat to protect himself.

Life Skills: Negotiation: self-management; respect the opinions of others Values: Perseverance

Review C Revision of Units 7-9

Page 32

Page 22

weather

Page 64

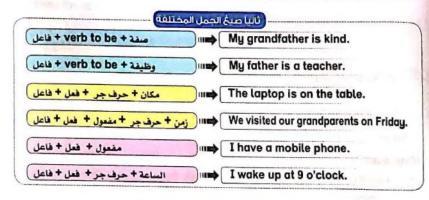
كيف تُكتب مُعَرة الشائية How to write a paragraph

خيفية الإجابة على السؤال السادس في الامتحان (paragraph)

يطلب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية عن موضوع من موضوعات الملهج مخونة من ٧٠ إلى ٨٠ كلمة بعد أن تم تعديل السؤال هذا العام بحيث يعطى لهم اسم الموضوع فقط،

متى نكون الجملة بشكل صحيح بجب أن ندرس الأتي جيدًا،

| | | ******* | ترتيب الجملة | l | |
|------------------|----------------|------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| | فاعل | | فعل | | تكلمة الجملة |
| اسم شخص Ahmed | مکان school | خیء car | مضارع بسيط/ مستمر is going / go / goes | ماضی بسیط / مستمر was doing / did | ظرف زمان – مکان/صفة/حال home / yesterday happy / well |



A model Paragraph

Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(Your friend)

My friend is Ahmed. He is a clever student. He always comes frist at school. All his teachers like him. All his friends like him, too. He has many hobbies. He plays chess at home with his brother. He plays football every week with his friends. His favourite food is koshari. He spends his free time reading and writing short stories. He doesn't like watching TV or playing video games. He always helps mother at home. Ahmed is so kind.



Objectives

Reading:

A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe

Writing:

A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

Listening:

An interview with a musician

Speaking:

Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

Language:

Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although or because

Life Skills:

Making decisions

58 pages 2-5 WB pages 70-71

Key Vocabulary,,

ر<mark>قوم الطالب بتسمي</mark>ع المفردات في جزء التسميع في آخر الكتاب

| aquarium planetarium sports centre shopping centre funfair | ملاهى | bowling alley* haircut nervous exhibition school canteen | صالة البولينج ملاقة الشعر متوتر معرض مقصف (كانتين) المدرسة رولفين |
|--|---------------|--|--|
| | استاد كرة قدم | dolphin beach | دولفین شاطئ |

Vocabulary

| weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | together | لفم |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| wheel | عجلة دوارة (في الملاهي) | fun | متعة |
| stars | ندهه | swimming pool | حمام سباحة |
| birthday | عدمدلا | the same | نفس الشيء |
| whale | | most | معظم |
| great | | aged (adj) | بالغ من العمر |
| team | فريق | dark | -AF |
| the Earth | كوكب الأرض | statue | تمثال |
| the moon | القمر | salad | abl. |
| café | مقهى | delicious | لذيذ |
| diary | يوميات | | جانب |
| exciting | | move (d) | بنتقل / يتحرك |
| plan | خطة | hope (d) | يأمل |
| school uniform | زی مدرسی | decide (d) | يقرر |
| friendly | ودود | add (ed) | يضيف |

Words & Meanings

| aquarlum معرض أحياء ماثية | an indoor centre where you can look at sea animoswimming in water | als and fis |
|--------------------------------|---|-------------|
| bowling alley صالة البولينج | a place where you can go bowling | 37 |
| کانتین canteen | a dining room in an office building(*) or school | 495 |
| متمك museum | a building to keep and display(2) important things from | the past |
| مترتر nervous | worried or frightened about something | in and sixt |
| sports centre مرکز ریاضی | a place where you can do sports indoors | e injec |

Lessons 1 & 2

| ********* | a place where you can play or watch sports matches |
|---------------------|--|
| stadium | a place where you can play or water sports |
| استاد ریاضی | ٠ي |
| planetarium | an indoor centre where you can learn about stars |
| مبنى القبة السماوية | and planets(4) |
| funfair ملاهی | a park with fun ⁽⁵⁾ rides and games |

| Expressi | ions |
|----------|------|
| | |

| Let's + inf. | هيا بنا |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| go shopping | يذهب للتسوق |
| go bowling | يلعب البولينج |
| do the homework | يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي |
| have a fantastic we | يقضي اسبوع رائع ekend |
| have a haircut | يقص شعره |
| take the bus to | يستقل الاتوبيس إلى |
| | |

| Prepos | itions / |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| ride on a wheel | يركب عجلة دوارة |
| on my birthday | فى عيد ميلادى |
| learn about | يتعلم عن |
| helpwith | يساعد في |
| drive from to | يقود سيارة من إلى |
| frightened of | مرعوب من |
| a plan for | خطة ل |
| good at | جيد في |
| 11 | 1, 14 |

Word Differences

| Word Billet | |
|---|---------------|
| feel يشعر fall whale حوت wall great take يستغرق / يأخذ take مقهى (مكان) fall coffee | يحين يتحدث |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple |
|---------|-------|-------------|
| ride | يركب | rode |
| win | يفوز | won |
| leave | يغادر | left |

| Present | | Past simple |
|---------|------------|-------------|
| drive | يقود سيارة | drove |
| sit | يجلس | |
| teach | يدرس | taught |

است

7-6-1



1 > (go) with sports

منفدم go مع الرياضيات والانشطة التي تنتهي بـ (Ing-):

مذهب للتسوق - go shopping - go bowling يلعب اليولينج

مذهب للصيد - go fishing يذهب للسياحة go swimming - go

2 > like

ماني بعد الفعل like فعلاً مضافًا له (ing-) أو اسم (n):

• ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (إكس) مع عدم نطق (hi)

ex. Sara likes history and she likes playing games.

Reading



Ziad's questions



* exhibition

Arabic Meaning

و- عطلة نهاية الأسرع ٧- عجلة دوارة 4- 100 ١- ممك الدولفين - لجوم

٧- الوليج

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to(1) our new house in Alexandria. It took(2) three hours(3) to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Monday 9th May

Reading

This morning, Mum and I went shopping (4) to buy a new school uniform for me. I hope students are friendly in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous⁽⁷⁾, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen(8).

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park(9). I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun(10) On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre(11). It is great(12), there is a really big

Tapescript

Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum" with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues". We learned a lot.

In the evening, I wanted go to the funfair, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother,

so we went the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday. too! And two days ago, on Sunday, we went to the planetarium*131, but it was

Arabic Meaning المساوية اسعرض أسياء مالية

So, we took a bus to the aquarium*(4) on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark!

Say it correctly

Adam's diary

planetarium / aquarium

و ينطق الجزء العلون من هذه الكلمات مثل صوت (0) في كلمة Squcre

 و ينطق العزه العلون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطقه كلمة (shoe) تمامًا. * statue



Arabic Meaning

استل إلى J ---٢-امات ١- دما كسول 0-زی طومی

٦-ودود 15-4

1-1 ١١- وكر داخي

١٢- رالع ١٢-ماء ساط

swimming pool 133.

Say it

correctlu



Nahla's diary

house and I came home very late!

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday(1) and her family took us to some $\mathsf{exciting}^{(2)}$ places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel $^{\scriptscriptstyle{(3)}}$ but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues(4). I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's

Arabic Meaning ا-عد ميلاد ب-عجلة دوارة ا- سالل

Reading



Dad tikes sports. He is very good at(1) swimming. Mum loves cooking(2). Arabic Meaning Her salads are delicious!(3)! Ismail likes being outside(4) and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things.

١- جد لي ٧- الطهى ١- بالغارج



* alley

و ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (إي).



Check Up Exercises

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1. A/An is a place where you can play or watch sports matches. SB
 - canteen

aquarium aquarium

🔢 stadium

museum

- museum
- d aquarium
- 2. Let's go on the big wheel at the _____ this weekend!
 - planetarium
- WB
- 3. The tourists visited a famous _____ where they saw many ancient statues.
- 1 funfair

- a cinema **b** museum
- **G** funfair
- d planetarium
- 4. On my first day at my new school, I felt really cheap
 - bright
- delicious
- **10** nervous

Lessons 1 & 2

5. I will go _____ with my dad soon.

o shops

b shopping

to shop

🚺 a shop

| Homework Exercises

⊙ يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I loved the fish but I didn't see any whales at the

WB football stadium planetarium

o bowling alley aquarium 2. We like riding on the big _____ at the funfair.

nole nall o wall

m wheel

3. ____ are very clever sea animals.

 Goats **Dolphins**

Birds

Monkeys

4. It was great at the My team won 2-0!

football stadium canteen

🔞 theatre

WB

WB

SB

museum [5. The balls are very heavy at the _____.

theatre **bowling** alley

aquarium 6. Hassan is really fit. He spends most of his time at the

b museum

6 funfair museum

6 sports centre

aquarium [6]

7. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the $_{---}$ bowling alley aquarium a

football stadium planetarium

8. A/An _____ is a dinning room in an office building or school.

museum (**b** stadium a canteen 9. There are some fantastic paintings at the

g sports centre funfair

a exhibition aquarium [6]

10. The _____ in the sky are bright.

o places

aquarium 👩

10 statues

pools

d stars

11. I _____ a haircut once a month.

b have do lo

build

d hurt

12. I saw some fishermen and big boats at the

playground peach c beach

finfair

13. I had lunch with my family at a big __ in Giza.

dish m restaurant

cooker cooker

1 menu

Past time expressions

راجع زمن الماضي البسيط

Revise the past simple tense

اللكوين / Form

التصريف الثاني للفعل + فاعل (كل الحتمالا) Subject -ويتقسم الأقعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة

(اولا: الأفعال المنتظمة: هم الأفعال التي يتكون منها العاضى وإضافة (ed) الخر الفعل

walk -- walked - إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (a) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل play -- played

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حول ماكن ، حول الا نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (led) dance -- danced like -- liked

carry -- carried - يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأنعال عند إضافة ed study -> studied

travel -- travelled stop -- stopped ثانيا: الأقمال غير المنتظمة: ﴿ هِي الأفعال التي لايضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي

have/has -> had

Affirmative / الاثبات

ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.

ex. I played games last week.

1 Negative

صدر الفعل.Subject + didn't + inf

ex. I didn't visit my family.

---- Question

مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + Did (كلمة إستغمام) --

ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did,

- No, she didn't.

ex. A: What did you do yesterday?

B: We went to the funfair.

Usage / Poladawyi ، يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى في الماضي

ex. We met a famous footballer yesterday.

ex. Once, there was a fire in our street.

Past time expressions

تعبيرات الماضي

Lessons 1 & 2

تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن العاضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث القعل:

Last... ذات مرة uesterday once ...ago in the past (T.1.) ale (d In (2010)

ex. I went to the museum tast night.

ex. We went bowling four years ago.





Check Up Exercises

1 > Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did you do weekend?

a last

m ago

next

mon [

SB

2. A: When did you travel to Aswan?

Tomorrow

gesterduy

M Yesterday

Next week

1n 2022

3. We saw an exhibition about dolphins three months

o for

m next

🔚 last

ago

4. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday

this morning tomorrow to

next week

5. Last week I to London on hollday.

go go

went went

goes

am going

our family moved to our new house in Alexandria.

Tomorrow

Next week

Yesterday

Mow

SB

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. I am quite nervous on my first school day. 2. Tomorrow, Hala went to school by bus.
- 3. Hassan move to Cairo ten years ago.

Homework Exercises

@ بوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب.

1 > Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Mum and I went shopping Friday.
 - next **now**
- c last
- d ago

WB

WB

WB

WB

- 2. It's January now. It was December _____ month.
 - ago ago
- d in
- a last 6 next - Adam and his family move house? 3. A: What day
 - B: Last month.
 - do to 6 did
- c does
- **1** will

d ago

- 4. I was at school at 8 a.m. today. What time did you arrive ____? g yesterday **b** tomorrow o now
- 5. The students of class 1B went to the funfair week.
 - last
- **D** next
- c in
- ogo 🚺
- 6. Hany some new shoes last Saturday.
 - is buying **D** buys **buy**
- **l** bought 7. It's ten past ten. The ten o'clock bus left ten minutes ... WB d in
- ago ago D past
- 8. I went shopping with my Grandad Sunday.
- next (b) last c in 9. Nahla ____ a fantastic weekend last month.
 - has **b** have
- had

c to

d having

at at

- 10. A: _____ you ready for yesterday's exam?
 - B: Yes, sure.
 - Were
- Did Did
- Could
- O Do

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Ali and I have lunch together yesterday.
- 2. Adam did his homework an hour age.
- 3. He driving to Alex with his family last Saturday.
- 4. I ride on the big wheel last week.

Key Vocabulary

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المغردات في جزء التسميع في أخر الكتاب

| musician saitor cave terrible jungle | بخار کمف | nearby alone coconut sink (sank, sunk) (n) | قريب – مجاور بمفرده – وحده ثمرة جوز الهند يغرق (للأشياء) /حوض |
|--|--------------|---|--|
| | Types | f music | |
| jazz music rock music pop music | موسيقي الروك | opera music classical music traditional music | موسيقى الأوبرا موسيقى كلاسيكية موسيقى تقليدية |

Vocabulary

| storm عاصفة happen (ed) حُدث طوعل |
|-----------------------------------|
|-----------------------------------|

Words & Meanings

| بمفرده - وحده alone | not with other people | ا-فار جوز / بدق |
|----------------------------|--|-------------------|
| coconuts ثمار جوز الهند | large brown nuts ⁽¹⁾ that grow on palm trees ⁽²⁾ | ا-نغل ۲-ئىر |
| sallor بخار | someone who sails(3) or works on a boat or ship | |
| sink (r) يغرق | go down into water | THE LABOUR STATES |
| terrible النظيع /سنجدًا | very bad | 17.070755 |
| sink (n) حوض | something in a kitchen we wash dishes in | |

/ Expressions

| play the piano | يعزف على البيانو |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| like best | يحب جدًا |
| walk along the beach | |
| walk through a jungle | |
| work on a boat a ship | يعمل على قارب / سفينة |
| go down into water | يغوص في الماء |
| all over the world | في كل أنحاء العالم |
| write a diany | يكتب بوميات |
| write songs | يكتب أغاني |
| | |

Prepositions 4

| - | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| good for | المبتد ا |
| look for | معن عن |
| bu bus | الاتوبيس |
| at the weekend | ألى مطلة نهاية الاسبوع |
| on the island | ملى الجزيرة |
| on the beach | ملى الشاطئ |
| a story by | لهبتة نسن |
| sleep on a bed | ينام على فراش |
| get up | بصحو / يستيقظ |

Word Differences

| sound | صوت (شئ) | voice | موت (إنسان) |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| interviewer | المحاور (مدير الحوار) | interviewee | من يُجري معه الحوار (الضيف) |
| hungry | جائع | angry | غا ضب |
| sink | يغوص/يغرق (للأشياء) | | يغوص/يغرق (للأشخاص) |
| nearby A | يعوض/يعرق (للاشياء) قريب | nearly | تقريبًا |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | | |
|---------|------|-------------|---|--|
| write | يكتب | wrote | 1 | |
| find | يجد | found | | |

| Present | | Past simple |
|---------|--------|-------------|
| think | يعتقد | thought |
| get up | يستيقظ | got up |



1 > dead · death

- · dead (adj)
- ex. Crusoe found a dead fish on the beach.
- death (n)
- ex. The death of Ali's mother made him so sad.

2 > alone · lonely

- alone
- ex. You shouldn't leave a child clone in the house.
- lonely

20

ex. Although I meet a lot of people, I feel lonely.

شاعر بالوحدة

الموت

(I) Tapescript

Interviewer : Marvin Allstar is a famous musician⁽¹⁾. He writes

songs and plays 2 in a band 3. Hello, Marvin, what

lupe of music do you like?

Maryin : Hello. Well, I like jozz* music best. I play the

trumpet in a jazz band.

Interviewer : The trumpet? When did you learn to play the

trumpet?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano

first when I was four, and I moved on to the trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer : Amazing! Do you like pop music"?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music*).

But I quite like traditional music®.



Arabic Meaning

اسوساد ۲-بول جسؤة وسلا 1-من

مسوسیلی البعاز اسبولی

۷-موسیلی الوز ۸-موسیلی الووظ ۹-موسیلی طفعیلا

Reading



Robinson Crusoe

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story⁽¹⁾ by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor⁽²⁾. One day his ship sank⁽³⁾ because there was a really terrible⁽⁴⁾ storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby⁽⁵⁾ island*, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary⁽⁶⁾ of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone⁽⁷⁾. This afternoon I found a dead⁽⁶⁾ fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

19th December

I found a coconut⁽⁰⁾ on the beach today. It was delicious. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look

for a cave⁽¹⁰⁾. I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle⁽¹¹⁾ and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave!!



| 8 | S | a | 10 | 2 |
|---|----|---|----|---|
| 1 | | | | |
| - | ja | Z | | |

لاحظ أن حرف (3) في هذه الكلمة لا ينطق.
 لاحظ أن حرف (أ) في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل صوت (د ج).



Je-1.

Just-11

21



Check Up Exercises

| | | | | 1 100 |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| Choose the co | answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1. A is sor | neone who works o | sailor | dentist | WB |
| 2. All my family we | ent to the party and | left me | d alone | - |
| 3. The ship | because it hit a | very big rock. thought | drowned | Wa |
| | | araw on palm trees. | d terrible | WB |
| Coconuts | Melons | grow on palm trees. Apples | Cucumber | rs |
| | Homework | Exercises | | |
| | | واجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب | د تمرينات إضافية لل | و بر ڊ |
| Choose the co | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1. Mr Ali lives in a | an place, | so I always visit him. | alone | |
| o far | taraway ith at page | nearby le, or do you prefer to | | |
| - londu | fordwall | dione | Hearby | |
| 3 I don't know how | v to go through the | | too many trees | there. |
| jungle | b playground | cave | d city | |
| 4. I like | but it is difficult to o | pen them. | | WB |
| m watermelons | b coconuts | opples | d bananas | 4 |
| 5. Crusoe's ship so | ink because there w | as a really | storm. | SB |
| nice nice | 1 light | | | 100 |
| 6. My grandfather | was a and | visited countries all o | ver the world. | WB |
| a sail | | c student | a sailor | |
| 7. Robinson Cruso | e lived an i | sland for many years | | |
| on on | 6 out | o with | @ about | 200 |
| 8. Do you think this | s glass bottle will | in the water? | | WB |
| 1 run | swim | | o sink | 100 |
| | ually sleep in | | - A | |
| o tents | | o beds | d rivers | 10) |
| | | lays music as a job. | | 100 |
| o sailor | musician [1] | o farmer | (ii) architect | |
| | | | | |



Types of questions

وجد في اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

Yes /No Questions

• هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص، مثل: (be / do / can / have / are / will) ونجيب عنها بـ (Yes) (No)

ex. Did you go to the park? ex. Are you happy?

/ No. I didn't. Yes, I did. / No, I'm not. Yes, I am.

ملاحظات

عادة ما نستخدم في الإجابة نفس الفعل المساعد/الناقص.

ترتفع نبرة الصوت في نهاية هذا النوع من الأسئلة.

2 Wh- Questions

هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

| What | ما/ماذا (للأشياء) | How many | كم العدد |
|-------|-----------------------|-------------|------------------|
| Where | | How much | ما ثمن / كم كمية |
| Who | من (للأشخاص) | | ما مدة / طول |
| When | | How often | كم عدد المرات |
| How | كيف (للطريقة / للحال) | | ما الوقت |
| Why | لماذا (للسبب) | What colour | مالون |

ex. What music does he like? - He likes pop.

ملاحظات:

- عادة ما نستخدم في الإجابة نفس الفعل والزمن.
- تنخفض نبرة الصوت في نهاية هذا النوع من الأسئلة.

تخكره

١- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلى:

?...تكملة + فعل رئيسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد ناقص + (كلمة إستفهام)

٢- إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل مضافًا له (s / es / les) تستخدم (does) كفعل مساعد في السؤال:

ex. A: What music does he like? B: He likes lazz.

إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل في الماضى البسيط تستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد:

CA "

Homework Exercises

| | .17 | ة للواجب المنزلي في آخر الك | د تم بنات اضافیه | € يوح |
|------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------|
| Change the | correct answer fro | | ,- J | |
| | you go to the sport of | | | SB |
| | _ there four days ago | | | |
| g go | [5] goes | a went | going going | |
| | got a new jacket? | B: No, I | | SB |
| o do | o doesn't | amn't | m haven't | |
| 3you | got a laptop? | B: No, I haven't. | | |
| Are | n Do | Did Did | Thave | |

| | oan can | is is | la has | 0 |
|----|---------|--------------------|----------------------|---------|
| 5. | A: | your best friend s | peak French? B: Yes, | he can. |

Is Is Are **D** Can O Do 6. A: ____time do you go to school? B: At half past seven.

B: Yes, he

| When | What | Where | 1 How | |
|------|--------------|-------|--------------|----|
| | ı like jazz? | | | WB |

Did Do Do Are 8. A: _____Ali go to school tomorrow? B: No, he won't.

Does Does

Was

Will · B

WB

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

B: No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop.

| 1. A: Does Hassan like science? | B: Yes, he do. | (|
|------------------------------------|----------------|------|
| 2. Do you taller than your bothers | and sisters? | WB (|

3. What often do you go to school?

4. A: Has Ali got an umbrello?

Will

| 3 > Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: فيل الامتحان | جاب عد |
|---|--------|
| "What the people in your family like doing" | SE |
| | |

| | | |
|------|------|--|
| | | |

(م) إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل بالمصدر فتستخدم (do) كفعل مساعد: B: I visit him every week, ex. A: How often do you visit your grandad? ح- تذكر أن (are you) في السؤال تتحول إلى (I am / We are) في الإجابة: B: We are studying. OR B: I am studying. ex. A: What are you doing? ع- تذكر أن (were you) في السؤال تتحول إلى (I was / We were) في الإجابة: B: [was in Giza. OR B: We were in Giza. ex. A: Where were you yesterday?



Check Up Exercises

| 1 > Choose the con | rect answer from | a, b, c or a: | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------|------|
| 1. A: What time is i | t? B: It | quarter po | ist ten. | SB |
| ie is | m was | o has | 0000 | |
| 2. A: When | you go to the funf | air? B: I went the | ere last week. | 1 |
| did did | b are | c were | does | |
| 3. A: How do you o | ome to school? | | | . WB |
| B: I to s | chool by bus. | | | |
| | b come | came | comes | |
| 4. A: Are you ready | for your exams? | B: Yes, I | | |
| a ore | _ | c am | d was | |
| 5. A: Can you run f | ast? B: Yes | , I | | |
| a can't | 🔁 amn't | c am | d can | |
| 6. A: you l | ike classical music | B: No | , I don't. | 88 |
| Are | Mave 1 | O Do | d Did | |
| 7. A: Why | you go to school lat | e? B: Because I | got up late. | |
| ob 🔟 | (b) did | c does | d were | |
| 2 > Read and corre | ct the underlined | words: | | |
| 1. A: How was the | exam? B | : It is great. | (|) |
| 2. A: What did you | have for lunch? B | : We have rice v | vith meat. | , |
| 3. A: Can you do w | ell in your exam? B | : Yes, I could. | (|) |

70

رقوم الطالب بتسميح المفردات في جزء التسميخ في آخر الختاب

concert حفل شواه barbecue pepper زيتون olives

Vocabulary

| | | | مسرح |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| expensive | غالى الثمن | theatre | كاتب |
| tired | مأتعب | writer | يندق |
| closed | | hotel | واحة سيوة |
| windy | شديد الرياح | Siwa | رحلة طويلة |
| then | | journey | حجر |
| favourite | | stone | عالى الصوت - صاخب |
| whiteboard | سبورة بيضاء | loud | ينكرة |
| musical instrument | آلة موسيقية | ticket (d) | بصل |
| fantastic | | arrive (d) | يان يحاول/يجرب |
| bread | خيز | try (ied) plan (ned) | بخطط |
| Kenya | دولة كينيا | plan (ned) | |

Expressions

| / Explos | Jaions, |
|------------------|--------------------|
| have a barbecue | لديه حقل شوآء |
| go on holiday | يذهب في إجازة |
| get a ticket for | يحصل على تذكرة لــ |
| drop a phone | يُسقط هاتف |
| enjoy + V-ing. | يستمع ب |
| take a selfie | يلتقط صورة سلفي |

Prepositions 4

| wake up | پوقظ |
|------------------|-------------------|
| in the afternoon | يعد الظهر |
| happy about | سعيد بخصوص |
| look around | يتجول حول |
| drive to | يوصل بالسيارة إلى |
| with olives | بالزيتون |

Word Differences

| remember | يتذكر | remind | یذگر |
|----------|----------------------|--------|---------------------|
| tired | مُتَعب (شاعر بالتعب) | tiring | مُتعِب (مسبب للتعب) |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| # Pres | sent 3 | Past simple |
|--------|--------------|-------------|
| lose | يخسر/يضيع | lost |
| break | یکسر / پنکسر | broke |

26

| Present | | Past simple |
|------------|------|-------------|
| understand | يفهم | understood |

Language Notes

1 > What + be + subject + like?

- يستخدم هذا الأسلوب للسؤال عن صفات شخص / شيء. B: He is tall with black hair.

ex. A: What Is All like? A: What was the island like?

B: It was very big.

· miss 2 lose

-يغلد (يُضيّع) شيء / يخسر مباراة مثلاً، · lose (v) ex. I lost my ticket so I bought another one.

ex. Our team lost the last match.

· تأتى في التصريف الثالث بعد فعل (be / get) بمعنى (تانه / ضال الطريق)

ex. Those tourists are lost; we should help them.

- يغونه شيء

ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

3 > hope

- يستخدم الفعل hope يمعنى (يأمل) ويأتي بعده فاعل ثم فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط أم المستقبل:

ex. I hope tomorrow is a better day.

ex. We hope Ali will join us.

apescript

One

: Hi, Lina. How was your weekend? Woman

: Oh, it was terrible. Lina : Oh dear, what happened?

Woman : I watched a football match at the stadium. But my Lina

team lost 5-2. Then I took a setfie⁽¹⁾ but I dropped

my mobile phone and it broke.

Oh dearl Woman

Two

Hi Hisham. How was your weekend? Man

It was great! I went to the bowling alley with my Hisham

cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant(2). I had a pizza with olives(3) and peppers(4), and it

was really good.

Three

Woman 2: Hi Judy. How was your weekend?

: It was OK on Saturday although I had lots of Judy homework. But I went to the theatre(5) with my

family in the evening.

Arabic Meaning

١- صورة سكى

3 mj - F

100-6

Reading



Dalla's diary

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it

was closed because it was only 6.30 a.m.! Then I tried to do my maths homework but I tost all my work because my laptop⁽⁴⁾ stopped working. Although⁽⁵⁾ we planned to:61 have a barbecuce(7) in the afternoon, it was very windy. We could not have it! I hope (9) tomorrow is a better day!



(1) Judy

: I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because

we played all my favourite games!

(2)

: I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although Khaled

it was not her best book.

(3)

Marwa

: My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two

kilometres! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

(4)

Hany

: We read an English book at school today. It was evry good,

although I didn't understand every word!

Reading



Amir's diaru

Sunday 13th August

Today was a fantastic(1) day. First, I got up at 5 a.m. and had breakfast .Then, I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa⁽²⁾. Although it was a very long journey⁽³⁾, I enjoyed reading my favourite(4) book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel(5) because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

| Arabic | Meaning |
|---------------|--------------|
| | اً ١-رائع |
| | إ-راط سوة |
| | ٣- رحة طويلة |
| | أ2- طحل |
| | و- فدق |

Arabic Megn

يد مُعالَى

ه- بالوشع من

يدخل شواء يدخفيد الرياح

Exercises Lessons (5) & (6)

I Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. We had a nice _____ on the beach yesterday.
 - ticket hotel

interesting

- wedding
- m barbecue
- 2. The tourists anjoyed the _____.They said the music was fantastic, guide
 - century oncert concert
- 3. We couldn't go to the park yesterday because it was ____
 - windy

📵 year

- d nice
- 4. A: What happened to Ahmed last month?
 - B: I really can't _____.
 - nemind remember
- suggest
- d harm
- 5. The music was so _____, so I left the party.
 - n fantastic amazing
- nice
- **d** loud

I Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. All the windows were _____ because it was so windy.
 - open [

o favourite

- 10 closed
- wide
- expensive
- 2. People always eat meat cooked over a fire in
 - a shows
- cinemas
- m barbecues schools
- 3. Yesterday, I went home. _____ I had lunch.
 - Tirst
- Then
- Than
- Third
- 4. We went to the _____ and enjoyed listening to classical music.
- classroom
- sky
- c mountain 🕒
- **10** concert

- 5. My dad me to school in his car.
- o rode
- went [
- c drove
- d came
- 6. How did you get the _____ for the final match?
 - ticket
- player
- o viewer
- **d** playground
- 7. Tourists usually stay at comfortable when they visit Egypt.
- nospitats
- notels [
- schools
- theatres
- 8. After he worked for ten hours, he was really.
- tiring
- ocareless
- **boring**
- d tired

m unreal

Exercises

ex. The ship sank because there was a terrible storm.



ex. Although he was very hungry, he didn't want to eat another dead fish.



مستخدم (although) للتعبير عن التناقض.

WB > Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed: How was your birthday? : It was 0 Ali Ahmed: Did you have a party? All : Yes, I @ . Ahmed: 6 did it start? Ali : It started at seven. Ahmed: How did you feel? : I felt really happy 6 _____ most of my friends came to the party. All Ahmed: What about your best friend? : • he was ill, he came to the party AU

| 4 > Choose the correct | answer | from | α, | b | C | OF | d: |
|------------------------|--------|------|----|---|---|----|----|
|------------------------|--------|------|----|---|---|----|----|

1. We had a lot of fun at the swimming pool. It was _____ big.

realise neally a real

2. You should think carefully before you _____a decision.

M hurt c do make 10 build

the things that the 3. We went to the museum yesterday, I remember teacher taught us.

all all

o did

every

no no

o not

one.

4. A: Did you have a mobile phone?

Was

B: Yes, I

a has

WB

5. A: Will Sameh travel to Alex?

travel to Tanta. B: No. he _____

won't

b will

🛅 had

📴 can't

d isn't

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The work on that farm is tired.

2. He was so tired so he stopped to work.

(_____)

Writing Skills

- عند كتابة مذكرات يراعي الأتي:
- استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط في معظم الجمل.
 - استخدم ضمائر المتحدث (I / We).
 - اكتب الأحداث بترتيب حدوثها.
 - تحدث عن مشاعرك وآمالك وأفكارك وآرائك.
 - حاول أن يشمل كلامك على صور ورسوم.
- يمكن أن تنتهى جملة بعلامة تعجب (١) لتظهر عاطفة قوية دبعد معلومات مدهشة أو شبقة.
 - اكتب حرف كبير بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب.
 - فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

A fantastic day

Last Friday was a fantastic day. I went to my best friend's house in the morning and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! In the afternoon, I went home. I did my homework and mum helped me with it. Then dad and I went to the sports centre. It was great because there was a really big swimming pool. I had a lot of fun.

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took Your last weekend us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home venu late!

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 > Complete the following dialogue:

2. My aunt and uncle to London in 2018.

travels

| Omar | : What did you do tast weekend? | |
|-----------|--|-------|
| Ahmed | : I watched a football 1 | |
| Omar | : 2did you watch it v | vith? |
| Ahmed | : I watched it with my friends. | |
| Omar | : 0it interest | ing? |
| Ahmed | : Yes, it was. We had a great time. | |
| Omar | : Did your team () the ma | tch? |
| Ahmed | : Yes, my team won 2-0. | |
| Omar | : Will you go anywhere next weekend? | П |
| Ahmed | : Yes, we will go to the 6to enjoy riding on the big wh | eeL |
| 2 > Choos | se the correct answer from a, b, c or d: | |
| 1. A . | is a building to keep and display important things from the p | ast |
| o fu | The state of the s | |

canteen

travelled

sports centre

are travelling

3

| | • | | _ |
|---------|---|---|---|
| Lessons | 5 | & | 6 |

| 3. Sara was ill, so sh | e to scho | ol. | _ |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| - 11 | don't come | 0062111 001110 | didn't come |
| | had mornii con nniii | HILS UNIU HOLL OF THE - | |
| - de nontro | naugrium | c planetanum | U Station |
| 5. Your hair looks ter | rible, Omar. You m | ust have a | |
| a team | b statue | c fun | 11011001 |
| 6. A: When did you g | to the museum? | | SB |
| b. A: William did god s | ne museum four day | js ago. | |
| | b went | goes | am going |
| go 7. I like fruit because | it's goodf | | WB |
| | b for | c about | on on |
| at 8. A: Can you stand | on your hands? | | |
| _ | nave | C CITI | ore are |
| o can 9. A: Habiba | like reading? B | : Yes, she reads a | lot. |
| | TO DOS | UIU | |
| Do 10. Naguib Mahfouz | was a very famous | . He wrote | a lot of books. |
| 10. Naguib Maniouz | musician | a baker | m writer |
| 11. A: How was you | wookend? B: If | was terrible | _ I was so ill. |
| | b however | put | d although |
| a because 12. He didn't buy the | mobile he | didn't have enough | money. |
| | (b) although | because | d in |
| u during | en is so old he is t | | _ |
| 13 Mr Osm | b Although | © Because | M As |
| But 14 the film | Mulliough | tid not understand | |
| | Since | When | (d) Although |
| Because | | C William | |
| 15 he is so | | Although | d But |
| Because | D As | Millionagin | |
| Read and correct | t the underlined | words: | |
| 1. Did you buy these | | | () |
| 2. Last week, we are | e in Alex. | | () |
| 3. Last night, I watc | h a football match. | | () |
| 4. When I am young | , I could run fast. | | () |
| 5. Are you like lister | ning to music? | | () |
| 6. Has you got any | sisters? | the state of the state of | WB (|
| ➤ Write a paragrap | oh of about EIGH | TY (80) words or | مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان :1 |
| | "A fantastic | | WB |
| | | | |
| | | | 33 |

travel



1 > Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| | | إلى أخر الكتاب | |
|----------------------------|------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| 1. It was Ali's | b barbecue | birthdoy | d holiday |
| 2. The weekend w | (3) horing | o tiring | d terrible |
| 3. They visited a/a | after the | y visited the funfair. aquarium | theatre |
| 4. They came hom a morning | | ofternoon | d night |
| | | Functions \ | |

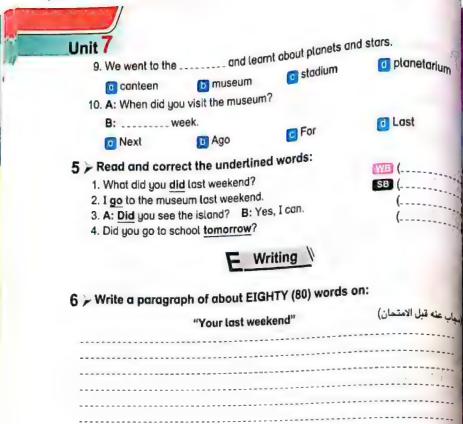
2 - Complete the following dialogue:

| Mona | Do you like classical music, Dina. |
|------|--|
| Dina | : Yes, I 1 |
| Mona | : When @you last go to a concert? |
| Dina | : I went to a concert last year. It was fantastic. |
| Mona | : Have you 🚳a ticket for the concert on Saturday |
| Dina | : Yes, I have. |
| Mona | : 4I come with you? |
| Dina | : Yes, you can. Are 💁happy about that? |
| Mona | : Yes, I am! It's fantastic. |
| Dina | : You are always welcome. |

3 > Read the following and answer the questions:

Robinson Crusoe was a saitor. One day his ship sank because there was a terrible storm. He swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody there. Then he found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice. Once, he found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. It rained and he was cold and wet, so he went to look for a cave. He wanted a warm place to sleep.

| | | aland? | | |
|---|--|--|--|-----|
| How was Cruso | e able to get to the | stanar | | |
| Would you like | to live alone on an is | sland? Why/Why! | not? | |
| | rect answer from a | | | |
| Cause wanted | to find a cave to | | | |
| a sleep | b hunt | c sail | 1 run | |
| When Cruson C | came to the island, th | nere wast | here. | |
| a sailor | b a captain | c no one | a pirate | |
| . The fish which | Crusoe ate tasted | | | |
| delicious | D good | o bad | oice [5] | |
| | C Vocabulary | & Structure | 11 | |
| | Coodsum | - | | |
| | | | | |
| | rrect answer from | n a, b, c or d: | | WP |
| | orrect answer from | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. | | WB |
| . Crusoe ate | orrect answer from on the island. | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. | d paper | WB) |
| . Crusoe ate | on the island. (b) stone yas your weekend? | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo | antasticl | |
| . Crusoe ate | orrect answer from on the island. | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo | d paper | |
| . Crusoe ate o rock A: | on the island. (b) stone yas your weekend? | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo | a paper antasticl How often | |
| . Crusoe ate a rock . A: | orrect answer from on the island. stone as your weekend? How | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. c coconut B: Fo | antasticl | |
| . Crusoe ate o rock A: | on the island. in stone in stone in stone in the island. in stone in stone in sinks | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. cocconut B: Fo What | d paper antasticl d How often swims | |
| . Crusoe ate o rock A: | on the island. on the island. stone as your weekend? How a stone in water, it sinks ayed musi | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo What churts calong time ago. | d paper antasticl d How often d swims | WB |
| Crusoe ate a rock A: | on the island. Distone as your weekend? Distone as your weekend? Distone a stone in water, it Distone a stone in water, it Distone a stone in water, it | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. c coconut B: Fo What c hurts c a long time ago. | d paper antasticl d How often d swims | WB |
| Orusoe ate orock A: wow wow why When you put of thinks People first place of modern you | on the island. i) stone vas your weekend? i) How a stone in water, it ii) sinks ayed musi ii) new got a new Camera? | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo What churts calong time ago. traditional | d paper antasticl d How often d swims | WB |
| Crusoe ate | on the island. D stone as your weekend? D How stone in water, it D sinks ayed musi new got a new Camera? | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. c coconut B: Fo What c hurts c a long time ago. traditional | d paper contastic! d How often d swims d careless | WB |
| Crusoe ate | on the island. in stone in stone in stone in stone in water, it in sinks ayed in musi in new got a new Camera? in Are travels on ships on | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo What churts calong time ago. traditional Do boots for a job. | d paper contastic! d How often d swims d careless | WB |
| o rock Na:w Why When you put thinks People first pla modern Have AAAA | on the island. D stone as your weekend? D How stone in water, it D sinks ayed musi new got a new Camera? | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. c coconut B: Fo What c hurts c a long time ago. c traditional Do boots for a job. c player | d paper contastic! d How often d swims d careless d Were | WB |
| orock National Process Trusse ate | on the island. Distone as your weekend? Distone as your weekend? Distone as your weekend? Distone a stone in water, it Distone a stone in water, it Distone Diston | n a, b, c or d: It was very nice. coconut B: Fo What churts calong time ago. traditional Do boots for a job. player | d paper contastict d How often d swims careless Were | WB |





Objectives

Reading:

A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum

Writing:

A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion

Listening:

Facts and figures; a quiz

Speaking:

Talking about measurements; making comparisons

Language:

Comparative and superlative adjectives

issues:

Loyalty and belonging

Life Skills:

Respecting different opinions

Vocabulary

| amazing | مذهل - مدهش | thousand | . 3 |
|----------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|
| metre = m | مثر مد | million | ئاييل |
| kilometre = km | | the world | إمالم |
| building | | -Am a | _{باد} ۔ قطر |
| important | | bank | ينفة تهد |
| ground | , | daily | ليمو |
| hundred | | link (ed) | بريط -يصل |

Famous places

| | I unious | plate | |
|---|----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| The Cairo-Alexandria deser | rt rood طريق مصر إسكتدر | The Channel Tunnel وفرنسا) | نفق المانش (بين انجلترا و |
| The Great Pyramid of Giza (الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة (مصر) | | Abraj Al-Bait Clock To | wer رج الساعة بأبراج البيث (|
| The Library of Alexandria | مكتبة الإسكندرية | The Leaning Tower of | برج بيزا المائل Pisa |
| The Tahya Masr Bridge The Luxor Temple | | The King Causeway | جسر الملك فهد |
| The Cairo Tower | | The Gotthard tunnel Lake Baikal | نثق جوتارد (بسویسرا) بحیرة بایکال (بروسیا) |
| El Castillo Pyramid (مكسيك | | | (=-30%) 0 |

Countries and Cities

| | Countries | und Cities | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| England | دولة انجلترا | France | دولة فرنسا |
| Russia | دولة روسيا | Saudi Arabia | دولة السعودية |
| Switzerland | دولة سويسرا | Tokuo | |
| Japan | دولة اليابان | | مدينة طوكيو (عاصمة اليابان) |
| | 045, 433 | Odilo | مدينة القامرة (عاصمة مصر) |

Words & Meanings

| bridge | مسر | something used for people and cars to door road or river | Arabic Meaning ا-عرامان اسریا شکک |
|---------|----------|--|--|
| tower | . برج | a tall, narrow building | ٢-مظت الشكا |
| | 641 | something you can go through to travel under the | |
| tunnel | • | Abrough a mountain | |
| pyramid | هرم. | a large building that is square at the bottom with | four triangular |
| city in | مدينة كي | a large town | 1000 ma 18 mas o march 18 marc |

go under the sea يعر أسفل البحر go over the Nile

| 3 | Word Differences | |
|-------|--------------------|---------------|
| tower | tour برج | جولة سياحية |
| city | town مدينة (كبيرة) | مدينة (صغيرة) |
| bank | beach ضفة النهر | شاطئ بحر |



1 Expressing measurements

| | ولا و المستقدم (١١٥٣) عليها صفة كما يلي: | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|-----------|------------------|
| į | How long? | كم طول | How tall? | كم ارتفاع / طول؟ |
| ĺ | How wide? | كم عرض / اتساء؟ | How fast? | ا کم سرعهٔ؟ |
| | How high? | کم ارتفاع | How many? | کم عدد |
| | How deep? | كم عمق؟ | How old? | كم عمر |

ex. How deep is the tunnel?

ex. How long is the road?

صفة + رقم + be + فاعل

- للإجابة يمكنك أن تستخدم:

يمر فوق نهر النيل

ex. It's 2.3 kilometres deep under the ground.

ex. It's 220 km long.

- لاحظ اختصارات وحدات القياس الآتية:

- للسؤال عن القياسات بمكننا أن يري (معروفا) ح

متر metre = m • kilometre = km کیلرمتر • hour = h • kilometre an hour = km/h

کیلومتر /ساعة km/h

Unit 8

2 > open

یان (مبنی - محل - مطعم) /یفتح

- مقعول + open (v) +
- ex. They opened the bridge in 2002.
- ex. Open the door, please.
- (بدون مفعول) open (v) open •
- ex. That bridge opened in May 2019.

الله (غير مغلق)

Arabic Mo

Arabic Meaning

٧- كم العمل

٣- كم الارتفاع

8- كم العمر

- open (adj)
- ex. When I reached the shop, it was open.



- The Pyramid of El Castillo⁽¹⁾ in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.
- **b.** The Tahya Masr bridge⁽²⁾ is about 540 metres long.
- More than 37.500.000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
- d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa(3) is just under 850 years old.
- The Gotthard Tunnet in Switzerland 2.300 metres under the ground.

Tapescript

- How long(1) is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
 - It's 220 kilometres long.
- How deep(2) is Lake Baikal in Russia*?
 - It's 1.642 metres deep.
- How high(3) is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
 - It's 601 metres high.
- How old (4) is the Luxor Temple?
 - It's just under 3.500 years old.
- How many(5) people live in Cairo?
 - More than 20 million people.



Russia

ينطق المقطع الملون مثل صوت (شا).

Lesson





Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Tahya Masr goes over the Nile in Cairo.

Bridge Tunnel

City

Tower

WB

WB

W8

SB

2. The Cairo _____ is the tallest building in Egypt.

Tower

1 City

Tunnel

Bridge

3. A lot of tourists visit the Great _____ of Giza every day.

mountain

D Pyramid

Cave

Eye

4. I think Russia the biggest _____ in the world.

country

Tower

(iii) century

river

o mountain

goes under the sea between England and France. WB 5. The Channel ___ Bridge

Tunnel

Building

Homework Exercises

1. Asyut is not a very big _____

tower

city

1 tunnel

2. A is a tall narrow building.

tour

o river

tower [

pyramid pyramid

100 mountain

3. The show was _____ Everyone liked it.

iterrible

b bad

WORSE

amazing

4. Tourists from around the ______ visit Egypt every year.

circle

tower [

building

d world

5. How _____ is lake Baikal in Russia?

📵 many

m deep

c tall

d often

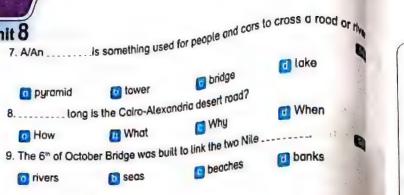
6. This _____goes under the river.

tower [

tunnel 🚺

lake

6 canal



Language Functions

9. The 6th of October Bridge was built to link the two Nile -----

Why

beaches

tower 8. . . . long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?

What

b seas

| Saying num | hers | راءة الأرقام |
|---------------|--|------------------------------|
| Joging Hum | بدأ دائماً بالرقم الأكبر: | عند قراءة الأرقام ن |
| 3.87 | three hundred (and) eighty-seven | |
| 4.073 - | four thousand (and) seventy-three | |
| 435.000 - | four-hundred and thirty-five thousand | |
| 37.000.000 - | thirty-seven million | |
| 37.435.191 → | thirty-seven million, four hundred and thirty-five, one hundred and ninety-one | 1 |
| 2.056,300 -> | م (and) لربط الملايين مع الآلاف أو لربط الآلاف مع المثات: two million, fifty six thousand, three hundre | الحظات ا - لا نستخد ed |
| 56,311 | ن أن نستخدم (and) لربط المئات مع العشرات لمثلاً: (fifty-six thousand, three hundred (and) eleve | nii I |
| رقام کما سیق. | (hundred / thousand / million) تكون مفردة في قراءة الأ | 1 b-V-T |

| | نستخدم: | ٤- عندما نويد ألا نعطى رقم محدد يمكن أن |
|-------|----------------------------------|---|
| | • more than • just under • about | أعلى من أقل بقليل من حوالي |
| 192 | more than one hundr | ed and ninety |
| 179 | → Just under one hundr | ed and eighty |
| 2.003 | → about two thousand | |



| , | Allower was called the second to the second | |
|--------|---|---------------|
| > Comp | plete the following dialogue: | |
| Ahmed | : Yesterday we learned about some amazing places in | Egypt. |
| | : Oare the | |
| | : The first place was the ② | |
| Omar | : They are really tall. What is the ① | place? |
| Ahmed | : The second place is the library of Alexandria. | |
| Omar | : Wow! It is really fantastic. What other places did you | leam about? |
| Ahmed | : The Luxor @ | It's amazing. |
| Omar | : How 6 | is It? |
| Ahmed | : I think it is about 3500 years old. | |

: Oh, I will visit it next weekend.

Unit 8

pyramid

o rivers

SB pages 14-17 WB pages 713

| | sunset جسر معلق | - Marie |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| suspension bridge | further , | - |
| achievements | further إنجازات | |
| | Adjectives | مريض المريض |
| crowded | wide مزنجم | ا عریض ان / مرتقع |
| low | high | للم |
| narrow | beautiful ضَيق ضيق | Jake |
| old | dangerous قديم | يس الثن |
| tall | cheap طویل / مرتفع | غليد _ا لميص المثمن مين |
| empty | ugly نارخ | |
| modem | safe | ان رقى الثمن |
| noisy | expensive صاخب / ملئ بالضوضاء | |
| quiet | ا هادئ | |

Vocabulary Vocabulary

| The Warrag Isla | يرة الوراق nd | population جز | السكان |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| view | طر قال | شبه الفأر) Etruscan shrew منا | ازابة (حيوان صغير يا |
| ice skating | لج على الجليد (بحذاء خاص) | bee | لله |
| skling* | لِج على الجليد (بزلاجات طويلة) | | Lamb |
| mountain climb | | traffic | يركة المرور |
| insect | الرة | price | ينز |

Famous places The Qasr El Nil Bridge The Red Pyramid جسر قصر النيل لهرم الأحمر (بدهشور) The 6th October Bridge The Shanghai Tower جسر ٦ أكتوبر يرج شنعهاي (بالصين) The Pyramids of Giza The Al Hamra Tower أمرامات الجيزة برج الحمراء (بالكويت) Mount Everest The Amazon جبل إفرست لهر الأمازون

| | Countries and Cities | |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| China | Brazil دولة الصين مديد | ولة البرازيل |
| Kuwait | Bangkok دولة الكويث | طينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند) |
| Thailand* | Brasilla دول تايلاند | سينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل) |

جيل كلمنجارو

Words & Meanings

| achievement jini | a result ⁽¹⁾ to be proud of | Arabic Meaning |
|-------------------|--|----------------|
| sunset غروب الشمس | the time when the sun disappears ⁽²⁾ from the | Y-state |
| | sky at the end of the day | ٢-ميك |
| suspension bridge | a long bridge that has thick(3) metal wires(4) to | ו-צורי שנו |
| جسر معلق | hold it up | |

| Expre | ssions | Preposition | ons / |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Be careful | خذ الحذر | crowded with | مزدحم ب |
| hit on a door | يصدم في باب | go down a road | يسير في طريق |
| make much noise | يسبب ضوضاء كثيرة | swim across o river | يسبح عبر نهر |
| walk across a bridge | یمشی عبر جسر | good for tourists | ملائم للسياح |
| the best time to + in | | at sunset | عند غروب الشمس |
| 6 kitometres away | على بعد ٦ كيلومتر | proud of | فخور ہے |
| fly at km/h | تطير بسرعة كم/ساعة | 1 | فى التلفاز |
| look like | يشبه | | |

Word Differences

| temple | tomb معبد | مقبرة |
|------------|------------------------|-------------|
| population | pollution تعداد السكان | التلوث |
| view | viewer | مشاهد/متفرج |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Prese | nt C | Past simple |
|---------|-----------|-------------|-------|-----------|-------------|
| build | يبئى | built | know | يعرف | knew |
| make | يصنع/يجعل | made | hit | يضرب/يصدم | hit |



1 > make

| • make + مقعول + Inf. | يجعل |
|--|------|
| ex. The terrible weather made All stay home. | |
| a make + issis + adjective | يجعل |

ex. Shanghai is crowded. That makes it noisy.

Mount Kilimanjaro

2 > • tall

عالى (تشير إلى الطول الرأسي للإنسان - العباني - الشجر - الحيوانات)

• tall

ex. The Great Pyramid is really tall.

ex. There are three tall trees in my garden.

ex. The Cairo Tower is a tall building.

الشير إلى الطول الأفقى للمسافات والأشياء)

Arabic Meanin

مداد السكان

long

ex. That is the longest tunnel in the world.

ex. Sara has really long hair.

3 > start + v - ing / to + inf

ي بعد المفعل (to + inf.) (start) بدون غارق في المعنى.

ex. When did you start doing / to do this job?

()) Tapescript

Voice

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare(1) two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further 21 away from the centre of Cairo, so it's less crowded with visitors(3). Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

Now lets compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower in China(4) is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait⁽⁵⁾ is 412.6 metres

tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern(6) than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities¹⁷!. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand® about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia® Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?

Reading



The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest(1) suspension bridge(2) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started

building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses⁽³⁾ the Nile's Warraq Island⁽⁴⁾. More than 100.000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor⁽⁵⁾, so you can see the river under your feet⁽⁶⁾. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset(2), for a beautiful view(8) of the city.

Arabic Meaning ١- أعرض - الأكد الساعًا LM

70

X E

0

2- جزيرة الوراق ٥- أرضة زحاجة

٧- غروب اللمسم

Reading



You probably '11 know that whales (2) are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest? A whale can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest(4) animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h. Insects(5) are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew(6). It looks like(1) a mouse and is the same size as a bee(8)



Arabic Meaning

١- من المحم 3-18-6

٣- الزَّبَاية وحيوان يشبه الفا

١-افزلج على الجليد

٢- لسكل الجبال

۲- اخشی آتی

Sau it correctly و ينطق الجزء العلون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ΘΘ) في كلمة (αgree).

Mapescript

Girt 1 Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Science? Arabic Meaning

Girl 2 In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all. I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you? Bou 1

Boy 2 I agree. It's also the least crowded.

Girt 3. What's your opinion of ice skating(1)? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing(2)?

Girt 4 I'm afraid(3), I don't agree.

Boy 3 What do you think about the new TV show?

Bou 4 I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.



| _ | 1.am (1. | D, C - | |
|--|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. That book costs only | t answer from a | really | d safe |
| 1. That book costs only | u two pourius. | - dangerous | |
| a expensive 2. Our school gave pri | b cheap | ts for their | em floore |
| 2. Our school gave pris | zes to some stude | bridges | d floors |
| o dreams | b achievements | it was really | |
| 3. No one agreed to bu | y the dog because | a nalu | d wide |
| beautifulThe best time to cro | b narrow | Bridge is at | • |
| 4. The best time to cro | ss the Tahya Masr | sunflower | d sunset |
| Sunscreen | SURDIOCK | | |
| 5. All of us like the | view of the l | cheap | d ugly |
| | narrow | Client | |
| | | | |

Homework Exercises

| Choose the co | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | 4 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| The world's wid | est bridge of | opened in Cuito in | May 2019. |
| co running | b suspension | swimming | d flying |
| 2. I can't buy that | mobile. It is really | | |
| o safe | | | d empty |
| 3. We went ice | in Mall of Eg | ypt yesterday. | |
| | b climbing | | a studying |
| 4 are th | e most dangerous d | nimals in the world | . WB |
| Subjects | D Islands | Bridges | d Insects |
| 5. I'm of | being Egyptian. | | . 3 |
| a careful | b empty | c wide | d proud |
| 6. It is to | o climb up the ladde | r very quickly. | |
| | 10 modern | | d dangerous |
| 7. I think mountain | is the mo | st dangerous sport. | |
| moving | climbing | spending. | M building |
| The tourists adm | ired theo | f the Nile when the | I Went on the bridge |
| U CUVO | view | tacto. | |
| 9. A is a | black and yellow in: | sect that makes he | |
| 110136 | RES DIAME | E . | |
| 10 is the ti | me when the sun dis | Oppears from the -t | d bear y at the end of the day |
| Sunset | D Sun cream | Sunglasses | y at the end of the day |
| | | Gunglasses | Sun |



صفات المقارنة والتفضيل Comparative and Superlative adjectives

| | | | | الى قصيرة وطويلة. بات القصيرة | ً • تنقسم الصفات من أمثلة ال <mark>ص</mark> ف |
|---------|-------|--------------|------------|----------------------------------|--|
| big | کبیر | fast long | سريع | tall | طويل |
| high | عالي | tong | طويل | nice ات الطويلة | من أمثلة الصف |
| popular | - | expensive | غالى الثمن | | عيف |
| crowded | مزدحم | difficult | صعب | modern | حديث |

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
 - نستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.
- تَحْتَلْفُ صِيغَ المِقَارِنَةَ والتَّفْضِيلُ حسبِ الصِفَةِ ما إذا كانتِ قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

| Adjective | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| short adjective "high" | er + than "higher than" | the + صنة + est "the highest" |
| | ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain. | ex. Mount Everst is the highest mountain. |
| long adjective "modern" | أثل أكثر more / less + صفة + than | الأثل الأكثر صفة+ The most / least |
| | ex. My city is more modern than your city. | ex. Ali's city is the most modern one. |

/ تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل }

• إذا انتهت الصفة بي إ + حرف ساكن تحول لا إلى أ نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy proisier than the noisiest / busy probusier than the busiest

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقة حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير؛

big ⇒ bigger than ⇒ the biggest / thin ⇒ thinner than ⇒ the thinnest

| | | ٠. ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ | تان ا |
|-----------------------|--|---|---|
| nit 8 | 5.1 | لا كعا مي: | مناك صفات شادة تحفظ Superlative |
| | antive | the best | |
| Adjective | Comparative | | |
| پد good | | the wor | |
| bad | | the mos | |
| many کثیر (للعدد) | more than | the mos | |
| | more than | the leas | *************************************** |
| الارلكية) little | less than | the forth | est / furthest |
| far 4 | farther / further than | | من الممكن أن نستغنى |
| | رنة وثقيب ال | عن than عندالمقا | ين المساول والمستقلي |
| | | | |
| ex. Mona is clever | but Habiba is cleverer (t | السد منتا الهار | نستخدم حرف الجر |
| کان أو اسم بدل على | but Habiba is cleverer (t يل إذا تلاما اسم مفرد يدل على م | بعد صفات التفض Heam. | مجنوعة (class / |
| 3.001 | | ;(65-41) | (SB p.17) |
| ex. My sister is the | tallest in our family. | | (SB p.17) |
| ex. My sister is the | the world | j. | |
| ex. The Nile is the i | ongest river in the man | . of اناتلامال | يئما نستخدم حرف الجر |
| | _ | | |
| ex. Ahmed is the cl | everest of all his friends | | (OD = 47) |
| ex. Some people th | ink maths is the most di | fficult of all. | (SB p.17) |
| | cises & Lesso | | |
| | Check Up Exe | | |
| - Choose the cor | rect answer from a, l | b, c or d: | |
| 1. Mount Everest is | than Mount K | (ilimanjaro. | |
| highest | b high | as high | d higher |
| 2. Look at the two | oyramids. Which one is | ? | |
| tallest | taller [| the tallest | d as tall |
| 3. Old cars are usu | allythan mod | dem cars. | |
| | - | noisiest | C) co pois: |
| 4. Giza is | | | as noisy |
| o big | Ohlana | himanat | |
| | onger the Ar | biggest | the biggest |
| as as | (most | | |
| | IIIOST II | more | |

omore [8]

than

| | ect the underlined crowded than Aswan. | words: | WB(|
|----------------------|---|----------------------|-----------------------|
| | big than a camel. | | SB (|
| | nost expensive one. | | (|
| - | er student in my class. | | () |
| | Homework E | xercises | |
| Choose the co | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | |
| 1. My friend lives | the school the | an me. | SB |
| a nearest | b nedrer | c near | most nearer |
| 2. Who is | person in your fami | - | |
| a tallest | os tall | the taller | d the tallest |
| 3. A train is | than a bus. | | WB |
| o faster | (b) fastest | as fast | the fastest |
| 4. I'm no | ow than yesterday. | | |
| as good | b good | c better | the best |
| 5. My dad thinks l | English is the | n French. | |
| difficult | b more difficult | as difficult | the most difficult |
| 6. My cousins felt | after they n | noved to a new flat. | WB |
| a happiest | b happier | c more happier | as happy |
| 7. The tourists we | ent to restaurc | ant in the city. | |
| good | the better | the best | d as good |
| 3. Is Doga | than her sister? | | |
| old old | b as old | the oldest | d older |
| 9. This is | building in the street. | | |
| o biggest | the biggest | bigger | as big |
| 10. Ali is tall, but | Rami is | | WB |
| o taller | tallest | c tall | as tall |
| Read and corr | ect the underlined | words: | |
| 1. The mountain v | was more high than w | e thought. | WB () |
| 2. This is the hap | py day in my life. | | () |
| 3. Which tunnel is | longest, this one or | that one? | () |
| 4. Cheese is bad | der for you than fruit. | | WB () |
| Write a paragr | aph of EIGHTY (80 |) words on: | مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان |
| | "Amazing places a | | |

Lessons 4, 5 & 6 SB pages 18-20 WB pages 844

| | -teance | |
|-------------|------------------------|-------|
| treasures | entrance کنوز | 404 |
| space | column فراغ/مساحة/فضاه | للومة |
| competition | fountain | |
| collection | iesus | |

Historical places & objects

| The Valley of the Kings | وأدى الملوك | The Rosello | عليقة الأزهر |
|---------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| The Kamak Temple | معبد الكرنك | Al Azhar Park | |
| The Hypostyle Hall | قاعة الأعمدة | The British Museum The Great Court | |
| The Grand Egyptian Museum | (GEM) | ف البريطاني) | لساحة الكبرى (بالمتحا |

Habu Temple

Vocabulary Vocabulary

| | | in all day places | لماكن الإجازات |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| valuable | | holiday places | عام (للجميع) |
| display | | public | |
| however | مع ذلك | hieroglyphics | الغة الهيروغليفية |
| objects | أشياء | covered | لمقطى |
| part | جزء | Europe | نارة أوروبا |
| century | قرن (۱۰۰ سنة) | plant | نبات |
| website | موقع (على الإنثرنت) | too | ليًّا |
| city centre | وسط المدينة | motorbike | ساجة نارية (موتوسيكل) |
| review | مراجعة نقدية | design (ed) | يسمم / تصميم |
| guide book | دليل إرشاد (للسياح) | welcome (d) | پرھپ ب |
| square metre | متر مريع | complete (d) | يكمل |
| playground | ملعب | expect (ed) | يثوقع |
| car park | موقف سيارات | allow (ed) | يسمح |
| Germany | دولة المائيا | agree (d) | بوانق |
| TV show | عرض تليفزيوني | disagree (d) | لاسانة |

Words & Meanings Arabic Meaning entrance مدخل the way into a building, such as a door or gote!" 41,0-1 collection a quantity: of valuable metals, jewels" etc. ٧-طدار اسعوه ان competition an event ", often followed by a prize, in which ومعث (هام) people try to be the best at something ه-پاه- ديني column a tall structure that holds up part of a building

| Expressions | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|--|
| have space for | به مساحة ك | |
| have a holiday | يقضى إجازة | |
| have the same opinion | له نفس الرأى | |
| gets busier | يصبح أكثر ازدحامًا | |
| spend (time) | يقضى وقت | |
| do a sport | يلعب رياضة | |
| | | |

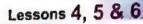
| Prepositions / | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--|--|
| at the weekend | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | | |
| on display | معروض / في العرض | | |
| look after | یعتنی بـ / یحافظ علی | | |
| special about | مميز بخصوص | | |
| during the day | أثناه النهار | | |
| similar to | مشابه ا | | |
| for longer | لوقت أطول | | |
| arrive at | يصل إلى (مكان صفير) | | |
| for the first time | لأول مرة | | |
| the same as | نفس الشيء مثل | | |

Word Differences

| century | country النين (۱۰۰ سنة) | بلد /قطر |
|---------|-------------------------|--------------|
| café | coffee مقهی (مکان) | قهوة (مشروب) |
| plant | planet أنبات | ركوكب |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | Present | Past simple |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------|
| باخذ / يستغرق take | took | understand 🙌 | understood |
| put يضع | put | يقضى / ينفق spend | spent |



Language Notes

1 > much + comparative adjectives

much قبل صفات المقارنة لتحديد مقدارها:

ex. At Azhar park is much larger than that park.

ex. Habiba is much more beautiful than Amany.

2 allow let

- allow + object + to + inf.
- ex. My dad always allows me to use his car.
- let + object + inf.
- ex. My dad always lets me use his car.

Reading



The Grand Egyptian Museum

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable(1) treasures(2) on display 3. However, the museum did not have space (4) for 100,000 other objects(5). In 2002, there was a competition(6) to design⁽⁷⁾ a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed(0) its first visitors in 2019. It is further's from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to 101 look after the objects really well.

One of the most beautiful ports(11) of the museum is the entrance(12), with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to complete the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected(13) to take many years of hard work.



Arabic Meaning 2-1 3,5-7 اً المعروض إ-ساحة - فراخ و-أنياء 2-16-1 ا-رحب به ١٠- قادر على 11-14(1) Je 20 - 38 14- 16/2

Reading



A website review

We had a wonderful holiday" in Egypt.

These are my opinions(2) about three of the most interesting places(3).

The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular * places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time My brother said, "This is fantastic. I am sure it gets busier"

later on(7) during(8) the day".

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple(9). My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall(10), a 5000-square metre(11) "room" with 134 stone columns*(12). I think it was more crowded

than the Valley of the Kings.

In my opinion the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple(13). It has columns similar to(14) those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

134-1-1 115-4 J- 101-4 و-مفهرز أمعيا 4-14-0 ٧- أكير الإدحاليا ٧- فيما يعد

Arabic Meaning

Ē.

G

٩-ميد الكرف ₩8-1. ١٢-اعدا حبر -in Las-9 F ١٥١-مشايد ل



Reading



The British Museum

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum(1) in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects(2). About six million visitors go there every year.

The museum has the biggest collection(3) of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone(4). This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics*(6) for the first time.

In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court⁽⁶⁾. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered⁽⁷⁾ square in Europe*(8). It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.



Arable Meaning

-14-1

ا- حمر رشية ه- اللعلا الي و غليفيا

١-١١٥ الكرو

N-Bellery

Sau it correctlu

و ينطق حرفي (le) من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (y) في كلمة (by) مع نطق صوت (g) column o لا ينطق حرف (n) في هذه الكلمة .

Unit 8



Al Azhar Park

Al Azhar Park(1) is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo.

It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains(3), a lake(4) and

cafés, too. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here."





Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The Grand Egyptain Museum has _____ for a lot of objects.
 - nouse
- **b** entrance
- **Tountain**
- d space
- 2. People found a lot of _____ inside that ancient building.
 - trains
- treosures
- tricks
- d trams
- 3. The tourists took a lot of photos at the museum
 - beach
- **bank**
- website
- d entrance
- 4. How many ancient objects were display in the museum?
 - at
- on on
- C of
- d about
- 5. The tourists stopped at the water _____ to take some photos.
 - **a** storm

1 terrible

- **10** mountain volcano volcano
- d fountain

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. That museum has a lot of _____objects. They are really wonderful.
 - valuable 2
- **worse**

Lessons 4, 5 & 6

01

M.

e

2. I always leave my car in a nearby car **o** poem palm o bark **13** park My book is similar _____ yours. o to c on at at of of 4. There were more than 160.000 of Egypt's most valuable SB museum. treasures subjects **b** walls spaces 5. I couldn't put the beds in my room as there wasn't enough there. d sky science space 🔟 spice 6. Ali won the first prize in yesterday's d column c fountain competition to collection 7. The Karnak Temple has a lot of stone **d** guards columns columns m websites n guides 8. Mr Alaa has a great _____ of stories.



stone

Cave

public public

entrance

Nile Nile

nelpful

9. The _____ of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places.

10. The British Museum in London is the oldest _____ museum in the world.

and / but / because

collection

Valley

a careless

١- تستخدم (and) للربط بين أفكار متشابهة:

d park

River

d ugly

SB

ex. He is fast and always wins races.

٢- تستخدم (but) للربط بين أفكار متناقضة:

ex. He is fat but he always wins races.

٣- تستخدم (because) للربط بين السبب والنتيجة:

ex. He couldn't win because he was tired.

عان عنه قبل الامتحان

1. I don't like this hotel _____ it is not very modern. **d** but

2. We went to the shop for some bread, ----- the shop was closed.

because

3. Ahmed did not come to school yesterday ----- he was ill. d but **although**

D SO o because 4. My sister didn't like the book, _____ I loved it.

d but although 50 o because

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The computer was very expensive because I bought it.

He was poor and he was happy.

3. I didn't like the music and it was too loud.

3 > Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

anguage Functions

1 > Asking for and giving opinions

طلب واعطاء الأراء

• نسأل عن الرأي بـ ي ... تعتقد أنها أكثر أم ...؟ - Which ... do you think is more ..., ... or ...?

- I think ... is the most ... Do you?

- What is your opinion of ...? Do you agree that it's more ... than ...? ما رأيك في ...؟ هل تتفق أنه أكثر ... من ...؟

العطاء الرأى:

ني رأيي، أعتقد أن ... هي الأكثر

- In my opinion, ... is the ... of all.

- I agree. It's also

- I'm afraid I - I think it is ... right now. اتفق معك و، وهي أبضًا

2 Responding

| Agreeing | Disagreeing |
|---|---|
| That's right. I think so. I agree (with you). | I don't feet the same as you about that. You are WRONG! I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. What? No way! That's impossible. I don't think so. I disagree (with you). |

- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد نستخدم:

- I'm not sure about that.



Complete the following dialogue:

Maram: What is the best book you can think of?

, it's Gulliver's Travels.

Maram: Why?

....it is really interesting.

Maram: I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.

SB

TM

(-a

NF

ta

pai

PO



| | A) 1 11/1. A | Inte | TOS |
|---|---|----------------|---------|
| | Anmed : Wny? | | |
| | Ahmed: Why? Maram: I think Robinson Crusoe is | | |
| | Ahmed: What? No U | | |
| | Maram: Anyway, both are great books. Ahmed: I agree 6 | | |
| | Ahmed: I agree 6 | | |
| | Excel Yoursen | | |
| 1 | b c or d: | than the Red P | Lina |
| | 1. The Pyramids at Giza are easier | d out | ਤਾ ਪ |
| | 0 10 | | |
| | 2. Mona has got money than Soha. To fewer the fewest little | less | |
| | 3. We visited Egypt'splaces last year. o best fine best o more | less | |
| | 4. Pizza is worse you than cheese. | - for | |
| | a off b in at | d for | |
| 2 | Read and correct the underlined words: | | |
| | 1. He is so weak. Although, he can carry heavy objects. | (| - • • . |
| | 2. The Hypostyle Hall is 5.000 circle metres long. | (| |



Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

Amazing places around the world

We can visit many amazing places around the world. The Pyramids of Giza are fantastic. They are very tall. They are always crowded with visitors. The Shanghal Tower in China is another amazing place. It is very high, too. It is really modern. Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is a very old city. A lot of people live there. Mount Everest is also an amazing place. It is the highest mountain the world. I hope I will visit these places when I grow up.

The most beautiful place you know

The British Museum in London is the most beautiful place I know. It is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has a beautiful collection of Egyptian objects. One of its objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. In my opinion, the best part of the museum is the Great Court.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (An important building in Egypt)

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a great museum. It welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has a lot of space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue there is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

General Exercises on Unit 8



| > Complete the following dialogue: | \$8 |
|---|-----------------|
| Omar : Welcome to Egypt. Is this your first visit to Egypt? | |
| Tourist: Thanks. Yes, it my first time to be here. | |
| Omar : 0 places will | you visit here? |
| Tourist: I'll visit the Karnak @ | |
| Omar : Wow! What other places will you visit? | |
| Tourist: I'll visit the Grand () | Museum. |

61

Scanned with CamScanner

1 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| 1. The oldest muse | eum in Cairo opened | in1385 | 1583 |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1853 | D 1033 | | C trains |
| 2. There were a lo | treasures by treasures | c truks | d trains |
| 3. I didn't have | for many object p space | s sports | d skies |
| 4. It was a | b terrible | o wonderful | d careless |
| | B Language | Functions \ | |

2 > Complete the following dialogue:

| Omar | : Yesterday we visited the Grand Egyptian Museum. | |
|--------|---|------|
| Hossa | m: Wow! | İS İ |
| Omar | : It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids. | |
| | m: When did it open? | |
| Omar | : It opened @ | 2019 |
| | m: Was it 🛛 | |
| Omar | : Yes, it was really interesting. | |
| Hossar | m: What did you 🔇 | then |
| Omar | : We saw a lot of ancient 6 | |
| Hossar | m: I will go there next week. | |

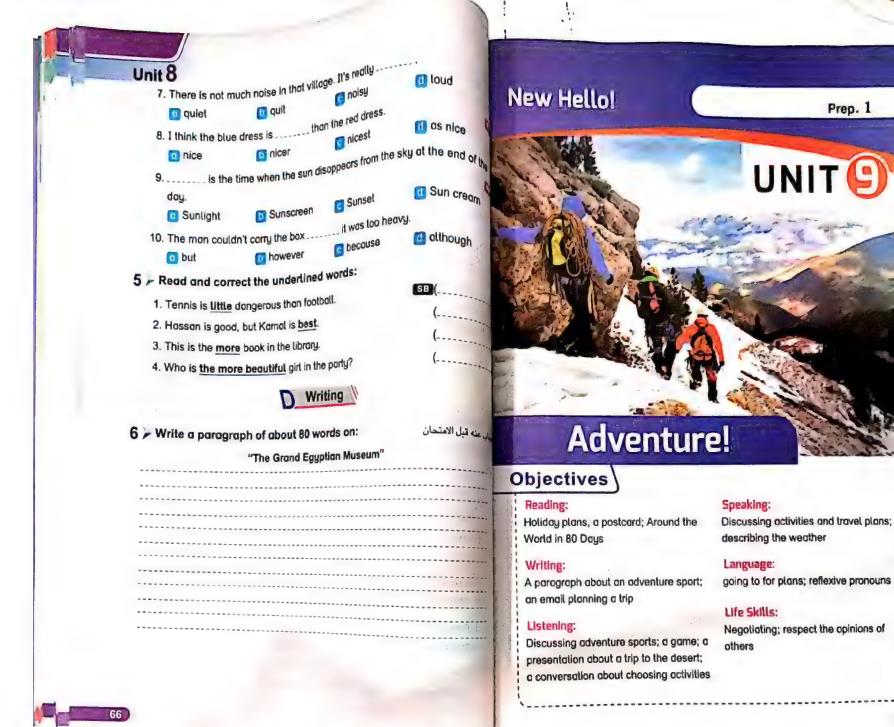
3 - Read the following and answer the questions:

The Kings of the Ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the King was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Mer wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses.

Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. The

children did the same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to be learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

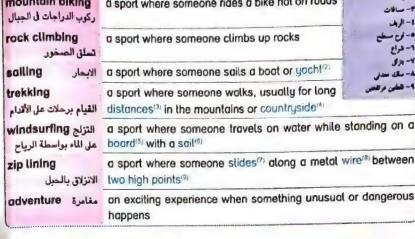
| · whith and the di | rls stay at home? | | |
|---|--|--|--------------------|
| Would you like | e to live in ancient Eg | gpt? Why / Why no | 17 |
| Choose the co | rrect answer from o | a, b, c or d: | |
| - Most Men in a | ncient Egypt wore | | |
| e caps | 11 blouses | g trainers | b skirts |
| - The Ancient E | gyptians thought tha | t their King was a | |
| a father | b god | c prince | d leader |
| The underline | d word "They" refers | to | |
| o sons | b children | co men | 10 women |
| | C Vocabulary | & Structure | \ |
| | | n n. n. c. or u: | |
| | orrect answer from don't hit your head o | on the door. It's ver | y (V |
| Be careful you | u don't hit your head o | on the door. It's ver | @ wide |
| . Be careful you one empty | u don't hit your head o | on the door. It's ver | wide |
| . Be careful you one empty | u don't hit your head o | on the door. It's ver | @ wide |
| . Be careful you o empty 2. Only people a o narrow | u don't hit your head o to low and bikes can go dow to wide | on the door. It's ver noisy n that road because big | d wide |
| . Be careful you o empty 2. Only people a o narrow | u don't hit your head o tow and bikes can go dow | on the door. It's ver noisy n that road because big | d wide |
| . Be careful you o empty c. Only people a o narrow d. The teacher w o quiet | to don't hit your head of low and bikes can go dow wide was angry because the noisy | on the door. It's ver noisy n that road because big e students were ve | d wide it is very |
| . Be careful you o empty c. Only people a o narrow d. The teacher w o quiet | to don't hit your head of tow and bikes can go dow to wide was angry because the | on the door. It's ver noisy n that road because big e students were ve | d wide it is very |
| Be careful you a empty Conly people a narrow The teacher was quiet Lice skating is a noisier | b low Indicate the low low low low low low low low low low | on the door. It's ver c noisy n that road because big e students were ve narrow noisiest | d wide it is very |
| Be careful you a empty Only people a narrow The teacher w a quiet Lice skating is noisier | to don't hit your head of low and bikes can go dow to wide was angry because the books of than skiing. | on the door. It's ver c noisy n that road because big e students were ve narrow noisiest | d wide it is very |
| Be careful you a empty Conly people a narrow The teacher was quiet Lice skating is noisier People use | to don't hit your head of low and bikes can go dow wide was angry because the noisy than skiing. | on the door. It's ver conoisy nother road because big e students were ve norrow norrow rockets | d wide it is very |



Prep. 1

Lesson





| Expressions | | Prepositions | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| look scary | يبدو مخيفًا | go down rivers | يبحر عبر الأنهار | |
| try + sport | يجرب ممارسة رياضة | for two days | لمدة يومان | |
| go diving | يذهب للغوص | across the desert | غبر الصحراء | |
| go windsurfing | يتزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح | under the water | تحت الماء | |
| travel home | يسافر عائدًا للوطن/ للمنزل | start / finish In | نبدأ / تنتهى والرحلة، في | |
| | | on the ground | على الأرض | |

dive

sail

fun

quiet

Word Differences drive يغطس يقود (سيارة) sell يبيع ايبحر مضحك funny ممتع /متعة تمامًا / جدًا quite alco



| Present | Past simple | Present | | Past:simple |
|---------|-------------|---------|-------|-------------|
| یدهب وی | went | wear | برتدى | wore |



Lesson

58 pages 22-23 WB page 84

Vocabulary

| odventure | مغامرة | No way! | امليميل |
|------------------|------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| adventure sports | رياضات المغامرات | quiet | فادئ |
| scary | مخيف | cook (ed) | يطهو |
| fun (ad) / n) | ممتع / متعة | | يبدو |
| How high? | | walk (ed) | پسيد |
| wind | | try (ied) | پېرې وشئ» / يحاول |
| article | مقال | | |

Places in Sinai

| į | | , Mount Catherine | Dahab | 20 |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-----------|
| | مخیم بدوی فی جنوب سیناء، | جبل کاترین دفی سیناء، | Dando | مدينة دهب |

Words & Meanings

| الغطس | a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals etc. | أأجد |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| التجديف التجديف | a sport or hobby where one or two people travel in | a narrow ⁽¹⁾ bod |

diving

kayakin

Arabic Meaning

١- السديق

0.6

a

1 > · look

يبحث عن look for look after

look أيضًا بمعنى يبدو ويتبعه صفة كما ورد أ

look scaru

ex. Eman and Hossam think that mountain biking tooks scary. • flight

· picnic

إدات المفامرات

هزلج على الماء

ساق الصخور

الاولال بالعبل

حازت على الأقدام

كوب الدراجات في

الاطويلة

2 - journey · voyage

 journeu ex. The journey to Luxor takes 9 hours.

voyage

ex. The captain took us on a quiet voyage.

flight

ex. The flight took two hours on a Boing plane.

القصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين) ية (خلوية) في الهواء الطلق

ex. My father went on a business trip to Paris.

· picnic

ex. We had a picnic in the park yesterday.

Tapescript Arabic Mean

: What are you looking at, Hassan?

Hassan: Hi Imad. It's an article" about adventure sports(2) in Egypt.

: Oh yes! Last year, I went diving? in the Red Sea. It was amazing!

Hassan: I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing 4, too.

Imad : What about rock climbing *15)?

Hassan: I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous,

but I like trekking 6, in the mountains.

Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai

with my family in the holidays.

Hassan: Are you going to try mountain biking⁽⁷⁾. Imad?

: No, I'm not going to do anything scary®. It is very difficult to ride a

bike in the mountains.

Hassan: I think you're right. Zip lining looks scary, too. : I think it looks fun 100! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan: Really? No wou''!

Soult correctlu

* climbing

يقطق الحرف الثالث (I) في هذه الكلمة مثله في كلمة line.

فلا ينطق حرف (b).

Tapescript

Mustafa: I'm going to go to the mountains.

Hazem: OK. Are you going to go trekking?

Mustafa: No, I'm not.

Hazem: Are you going to go rock climbing?

Mustafa: Yes. I am! Hazem: Your bag isD.

Mustafa: That's right. Hazem: My turn. I'm going to the beach.

Mustafa: Are you going to go kayaking* 1?

Hazem: No, I'm not.

Mustafa: Are you going to go diving?

Hazem : Yes, I am. Mustafa: Your bag is ... B.



* kayaking

وينطق المقطم (koy) مثل (kl) في كلمة (kite).

Reading





New Message

HI Emant

I'm in Dahab with my family 💆 🙂. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary.

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! 😂 We're not going to go kayaking. There is no

time! Love, Reem



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **1** swimming

1. We are going to go _____across Sinal. tricking tricking trekkina trekkina

2. You need a special bike to try Rock climbing Mountain biking Kayaking

3. Alt you need to do _____ is a boat and some wind!

4. We can't go _____today because there is no wind! **10** diving zip lining

6 diving trekking _ scary. I don't like it. 5. This film ___

looks T sees likes

| Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rock _____ is a dangerous sport.

10 sailing **climbing b** kayaking diving 2. I love ______because I'm good at swimming under the water.

o diving

D zip lining

trekking

ailing

d diving

d zip lining

WB

Prectice y

Trekking

📶 zip lining

10 windsurfing

d watches

3. In, you start really high, but you finish on the ground. c trekking b zip lining kayaking

4. I love, going down rivers. It's very quiet!

c trekking sailing **b** diving

5. Some people like to dangerous sports.

a wear D go c spend d try

6. We sometimes go _____ for two days or more usually across the desert.

Mindsurfing b sailing trekking

diving

7. They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult WB o journey **b** voyage **6** flight d picnic

8. The weather was nice yesterday. We took a boat and went _____ the river. a up **b** under c down d about

9. I always go to the sea; I'm good swimming. ot at of of

b to 10. Diving in the Red Sea is a great ...

a fan funnu

🚺 fun

a fair

of for



صيغ المستقبل **Future forms** "(be) going to" and "will"

1 (be) going to

.....التكوين Form

+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل... He/ She/ It Wel You! They - are

am = 'm / Is = 's / are = 're

نستخدم be) going to) للتعبير عن الآتي:

1- Predictions based on evidence

تنبؤ في المستقبل مع وجود دليل

خطط مستقبلية

قرارات مسبقة

نوايا

ex. She's studying hard. She is going to pass her exams easily.

2- Future plans

ex. I am ('m) going to visit Saini.

3- Decisions

ex. I am going to do the homework.

4- Intentions

ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next week.

- نستخدم (be) going to مع الكلمات plan - decide

Negative / اللغن

و للنفي نستخدم الصيغة الأتية:

+ am / Is / are + not + going to + inf....

am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Question / السوال

? am / is / are + فاعل + going to + inf.?

ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?

- No, I am not ('m not). - Yes, I am.

Lesson 1

لاحظ الألب

- مكن أن نستخدم be) going to) بعد (think) طالعا أن هناك دليل:
- ex. The questions are very easy. I think I'm going to get high marks.
 - (سميحة) (√) (x) (id=)

SB

WB

SB

Prectice Test

ex. The questions are very easy. I think I'll-get high marks.



Exercises Lesson (1)

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reem going to try rock climbing?

Are

will go

is going

go go

is Is

are going to

- Am
- **Will**

going

- 2. I hope we _____ to the moon in the future.
- going going
- 3. Who _____ to cook your meal this evening?
 - d to go c going
- **1** will go 4. What is Reem _____to do tomorrow morning?
 - gone gone to go
- 5. I'm ____ do this sport. It's too dangerous.
 - going to not going to
- going not
- not be going

SB (______

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. The journey is gone to take 43 days.
- 2. Ola is going to play games. She has no time.
- 3. What are you go to have for dinner, Hala?

I Homework Exercises

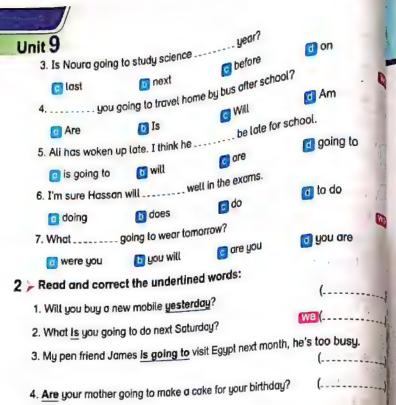
1 > Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Ahmed's journey _____ start in March.
 - is going to to go
- going to
- 2. I think my father _____ a new car soon.
 - o will buy
- 👩 is going to buy 👩 buy
- **buying**

going going

- in (3 hours) (ساعات) - in (3 hours)

SB



| Lessons 2 & | 37 |
|-------------|----|
|-------------|----|

"Key Vocabulary,,

SB pages 24-27 WB pages 85-86

| | | رطب / مبتل |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| Bedouin familles journey tent | wet عائلات بدرية weather رحلة طريلة protect (ed) | الطقس يحمى |
| guide | مرشد | |

Weather words

| | | | , McGaire | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------------|--------|--------|--------|---------------|
| | | Adlac | tive السلة | Noun | IYma | Adjec | السنة tive |
| Noun | الاسم | Adjec | | snow | الحليد | snowy | جليدى |
| sun | الشمس | sunny | مشمس | 211044 | | | عاصف |
| | 116 | roiny | ممطر | storm | عاصفة | stormy | - |
| rain | - | | | for | ضيات | foggy | لمَنْ بالضباب |
| clouds | الشحب | cloudy | ملبد بالغيوم | fog | 7. | | |
| wind | الرياح | windy | ملئ بالرياح | | | | |

Vocabulary

| | 10. 1.7 | sunglasses . | نظارة |
|------------|-------------------|---------------|---|
| dark | · · | | تفاوض / تشاور |
| skills | | negotiation | خانف / مرعوب |
| excited | منفعل / مثار | frightened | |
| towel | منشقة (فوطة) | dentist | طبیب أسنان |
| terrible | سئ / فظیع | eagle | تسر |
| experience | تجربة وفي الحياة، | | فكرة . |
| | سائح | | بركة ماء / حمام سباحة |
| tourist | صفحة على الإنترنت | 1 | يكمل : ١٠٠٠ الله المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية المالية |
| wepbage | | | يتفاوض/ يتشاور |
| date | تاريخ دموعده | negotiate (d) | |
| equipment | معدات | sound (ed) | يېدق . |
| top | ئىة | climb (ed) | بتسلق |
| mirror | مرآة | shop (ped) | بتسوق |

يرسم

يقوز

Post simple drew

> slept WOR

lost

Countries, Cities & Places

| | لفادم «مدينة قديمة في جنوب غرب سيناه، الحولة جنوب إفريقيا | 1 |
|---------------|---|--------------|
| South Africa | معر عرب سيناه، معر Sed | رابع الأد |
| Oman | The Red Sed دولة عمان دولة عمان المناه، المنا | 10 M |
| South America | Ein Kidd في الجنوبية | |

| | Words & Meanings Arabic Mean |
|-------------------|--|
| مرشد guide | a person who shows a place to tourists |
| | 1 1 -Box koon sole." |
| iourneu aliabala. | a long trip from one place to different |
| رطب / مبتل wet | covered with ⁽²⁾ water, not dry something you sleep in when you go camping ⁽³⁾ |
| tent خيمة | something you sleep in with |

| | with 1 |
|--------|--------|
| Expres | sions |

| Expressions | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--|--|--|
| enjoy ourselves | نستمتع | | | |
| keep warm | يبقى دانتًا | | | |
| take a photo | يلتقط صورة | | | |
| have a guide | بصحبة مرشد | | | |
| help me find | يساعدني أن أجد | | | |
| take me 43 days | يستغرق منى ٤٢ يومًا | | | |
| would like + to + inf | يريد أن | | | |
| get dressed | برندى ملابسه | | | |

Prepositions /

| - | | _ |
|---------|-----------------|------------------|
| نسن | get to the top | بعمل للقمة |
| يبة | on the way down | المريق لأسفل |
| بلت | put on | پرىسى |
| - بم | on holiday | الى إجازة |
| ш. | fall over | إسقط أرضًا |
| ایس | come out | ينرج |
| یر | sit by a fire | پېلس بجوار النار |
| ایرا | find out about | بكتشف عن |
| - | | |

Word Differences

| snow | بياب | ice | | شج |
|--------------------|------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| warm | داقئ | worm | | دودة |
| فی مکان ماweathers | الطقس دحالة الجو لفترة قصيرة | climate | عالة الجو الدائمة في مكان ماء | المناخ د |
| on time | في الوقت المحدد تمامًا | in time | والمناسب وقبل الميعاد بقليل، | فى الوقت |
| on the way | فى الطري <mark>ق إلى</mark> | in the way | الطريق | عقبة في |
| sun | | son | | إين |
| cross | يعبر (فعل) | across | ف جر) | عُبْر (حر |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Pres | ant | Past simple | Present |
|--------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| get to | يصل إلى | got to | draw |
| fall | يُستُط | fell | sleep |
| hurt | يصبب / يؤذي | hurt | lose |
| show | يعرض | showed | |



1 > Ordinal Numbers

- هي الأعداد التي تشير إلى ترتيب شيء ما في سلسلة من الأحداث وتستخدم أيضاً عند قراءة التواريخ. الأرقام الثلاثة

third (3rd) عالثا second (2nd) الثاني -وكما هو موضح عند كتابتها مختصرة يكتب الرقم وبعده آخر حرفين من الكلمة. الأرقام من 4 الى 20 يضاف للرقم ([«])

• hundredth (100th) • twentieth (20th) - وبعد الأرقام 90-20 تكتب كالأتى: • fourth (4th)

 twenty second (22nd) twenty first (21st) • twenty fourth (24th)

twenty third (23rd)

2 Weather words

- الأسماء التي تعبر عن حالات الطقس هي:

sun - rain - clouds - wind - snow - storm - fog

- لاستخدام هذه الأسماء كصفات لوصف حالة الطقس نضيف حرف (y) لها:

| | Noun السنة Adjective |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Noun Itua Adjective | مليد بالقيم (مارسان) و و |
| | clouds |
| rain Ilade | |

ex. It's rainy. = There is a lot of rain.

ex. It's cloudy. = There are a lot of clouds.



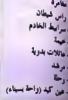
Reading

My Trekking Adventure

New Message

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across" Sinal. It's going to be a big advers

be a big adventure¹² I I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan to Serabit et Khadem 1. I'm going to sleep in a tent of and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey® is going to take



Arabic Meanin

me 43 days. Here's my plan:

- 3rd March Leave Ras Shetan
- 14th March arrive at Ein Kidd 9
- 30th March arrive at St Catherine
- climb Mount Catherine 1st April 15th April arrive at Serabit El Khadem





Mariam : Next year, I'm going to go salling down the Nile with Arabic Meaning my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.





Reading

Dear Grandma.

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africal Arabic Meaning It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain we saw dark clouds(2). On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm⁽³⁾. The rocks were wel⁽⁴⁾ and Tamer fell over⁽⁵⁾ and hurt⁽⁶⁾ himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.

Tomorrow the weather (7) is going to be better (6), so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened 91, but I'm excited(101, too



apescript

: This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



Narrator a

Girl

: It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds in the Voice

sky. I think it's a very hot day.

Arabic Meaning ١- طيء بالعنباب الاسوطب أحال

Arabic Meaning

١-و کاي ملايسه

3, the -4"

-1

Narrator b

: There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's Voice

going to be a storm.

Narrator c

It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the Volce

mountain. I think it's quite hot.

Narrator d

: It's very foggy(1). I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet(2). Voice



Nader: Mu trip to the desert

By Nader

a rainy

Last weekend, we went on a trip to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed(1).

I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror(2). I put on a hat and sunglosses(3) to protect(4) myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rade with him on our camets. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sot by the fire to keep ourselves warm.



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. It is usually very _____ in August.
 - **Sunny**
- funny
- snowy in the sky.
- 2. It is not very hot today because there are a lot of _____ **wind** storms
 - clouds
- **d** sun

WB

WB

Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية) :

عندما يكون هاعل ومفعول الجملة واحد (أي نفس الشخس)

قام تامر بإيناء نفسه.

7.

ex. They're really enjoying themselves.

إنهم حقًا يستمتعون.

ex. Did you hurt yourself?

ex. Tamer hurt himself.

هل قمت بإيداء نفسك؟

للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بقعل شيء بمفرده (بدون مساعدة من أحد)

u 🐼 1

ex. Nobody helped me do the work. I did it myself. بنفسي

• لاحظ الجدول التالي لضمائر الفاعل والمفعول وصفات الملكية والضمائر المنعكسة.

| Subject pronouns شمائر افلامل | Object pronouns فصائر المقمول | Possessive adjectives | Reflexive (| الشماتر |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|
| I ui | me | my | myself | ب (نفسی) |
| He ae | him | his | himself | ب (نفسه) |
| هی She | her | her | herself | ب (نفسها) |
| هو / هي لغير العاقل It | it | its | itself | لغير العاقل |
| You أنت | you | your | yourself | ب (نفسك) |
| You انتم | you | your | yourselves | ب (أنفسكم) |
| We نمن | us | our | ourselves | ب (أنفسنا) |
| They a | them | their | themselves | ب (أنفسهم) |

· لاحظ أن الضمائر المنعكسة التي تعير عن فاعل مفرد (I / he / she / it / you) تنتهي بـ (self).

ex. I made a cup of tea myself.

ex. You should clean your room yourself, Ali.

(هذا You تعنى أنت)

- أما الضمائر المنعكسة التي تعبر عن فاعل جمع (wo / you / they) تنتهي بـ (selves).

ex. They went to the party themselves.

ex. You should clean your rooms yourselves, boys.

· (هذا You تعنى أنتم)



Unit 9 Examples:

ex. Ahmed painted the house himself.

ex. Folma played the drums herself.

ex. The cat cleans itself.

ex. Ali and Mong cooked lunch themselves.

. إذا بدأت الجملة بأمر مثبت ... Inf. ... المنعكس في هذه المنعكس في هذه المنعكس في هذه المنعكس في هذه المنعكس المنعكس في هذه المنعكس المنعكس في هذه المنعكس في

ex. Use an umbrella to protect yourself / yourselves from the rain. . يأتى بعد فعل (enjoy) ضعير منعكس بمعنى ويقضي وفتًا ممتعًا،،

ex. We enjoyed ourselves in the park.

ex. Enjoy yourself / yourselves.



Check Up Exercises

1 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children usually enjoy when they play on the beach. Proofice Test d himself ourselves **b** herself 1 themselves

2. We enjoyed _____ when we went sailing.

d himself **b** ourselves themselves

3. I didn't buy this cake. I made it...... o yourself **b** itself

n herself

myself 4. Huda always cleans her room

themselves

5. Fatma took _____ a photo with a camel.

1 himself **c** itself nerself

d myself

d itself

d herself

الم الألى:

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did you all enjoy yourself at the park?

2. Animals usually clean itself.

3. Tarek enjoyed herself on the holiday.

| Homework Exercises

| 1 > Choose the corr | rect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | _ |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------|
| 1. Sami came out o | f the sea and dried | with a to | vel. | SB |
| nimself | b herself | itself | themselves | |
| 2. I made | some salad for lun | ch. | | SB |
| o yourself | b himself | myself | ourselves [| |
| 3. Sara has a jacke | t to keep | warm. | | MB |
| myself | (b) herself | themselves | 1 himself | |
| 4. Can you study E | nglish? | | | |
| myself | b yourself | himself | d herself | |
| 5. How can we kee | p from rai | n? | | |
| ourselves | b myself | themselves | itself | |
| 6. Maya taught | to speak Fre | nch. | | SB |
| _ | b themselves | | in himself | |
| | in caves to protect . | | es. | WB |
| ourselves | | | 1 yourself | |
| 8. Girls like to look | atin the | mirror. | | |
| themselves | herself | [itself | g yourself | |
| 2 > Read and corre | ct the underlined | words: | | |
| 1. Don't play with r | natches or you'll bu | m myself. | (|) |
| 2. We don't have a | cook. Mum makes | the food himself. | (|) |
| 3. Here are all the | toys, Ziad. Enjoy his | mselfl | (|) |
| | washes <u>herself</u> in w | | (|) |
| 3 > Write a paragr | aph of EIGHTY (8 | 0) words on: | بنه قبل الامتحان) | (مداب: |
| | "An advent | | | WB |
| | | | | e: et |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

Key Vocabulary

advantages يتحدى / تحدى challenge (d) (n) مميزات railway line خط سكة حديد

Vocabulary

| suggestion | اقتراح | tennis | لعبة التنس |
|------------------------|------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| email | رسالة بريد إلكتروني | station | محطة |
| form | شكل | present | مدية |
| sure | متأكد | library | مكتبة وللقراءة والاستعارةء |
| special | خاص | character | شخصية (في كتاب / فيلم) |
| photo album | ألبوم صور | too | أيضًا |
| famous | مشهور | visit (ed) (n) | يزود / زيارة |
| hobby | هواية | stay (ed) | يقيم |
| cousin الخال أو الخالة | ابن أو ابنة العم أو العمة أو | return (ed) | يعود |
| basketball | لعبة كرة السلة | suggest (ed) | يقترح |
| newspaper article | مقال صحفي | respond (ed) (n) | يرد / رد |
| transport | النقل | travel (ed) | يساقر |
| British | بريطاني | | |
| | | | |

Countries & Cities

| | | | 18 |
|-------|--------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Japan | دولة اليابان | المملكة المتحدة «بريطانيا» the UK | مدينة السويس (بمصر) Suez |
| India | دولة الهند | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية the USA | Hong Kong |
| | | | مدينة هونج كونج «بالصين» |
| | | | London مدينة لندن وبانجلتراء |

Words & Meanings o difficult task(1) or problem challenge

railway line خط سکة جديد the metal(1) that a train travels on

Arabic Meaning

Language Functions

1 Negotiating, respect the opinions of others

بن أجل اتخاذ قرار بخصوص شئ ما مع آخرين يجب أن نتفاوض (نتشاور) من خلال نقاش كالآتي: A: We're going to go mountain climbing. What equipment should we take?

B: I think we also as a second sec

B: I think we should take a phone.

- يستخدم should + inf أثناء التشاور للتعبير عن النصحية بفعل معين. - وتستخدم (اعتقد I think) لإبداء الرأي

ن خططنا العسنقيلية أثناء التشاور. (be) going to + inf التشاور.

A: We have a holiday, where are we going to spend it?

B: We 're going to go diving in the Red Sea.

2 Describing the weather

المقال عن حالة الطقس نقول:

- How is the weather?
- What is the weather like today?
- Is it hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.?
- Is it raining outside?

وللإجابة نقول:

- (Yes) It's hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.
- Yes, it is raining outside.



➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : Hi. Adel.

Adel : Hi, Omar. Did you do well in the exam?

Omar : Oh, yes!

: Where should we go for the

Omar : I think we should @_____to the Red Set

: How is the weather like there?

: Wow! I like windsurfing, too.

Omar : I ().....we will enjoy it. : Yes, it's a nice ()

Unit 9

Prepositions /

| Expression | 59 |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| do activities | يقوم بانشطة فكرة عظيمة! |
| Good ideal | عظیمة! |

| يقوم بانشطة | Г |
|--|---|
| يقوم بانشطة فكرة عظيمة! منى يذهب للمنزل | 1 |
| متى | 1 |
| يذهب للمنزل | |

| إد الشاط |
|------------------|
| فنيغ |
| *** |
| لابغصو لابغصو |
| ية. المالم |
| |

What time ...? = When ...? go home 9 يقبل التحدي take a challenge complete a challenge

lake the ship back make a mistake

إيسافر تجاه الشرق travel east يوحى بفكرة عظيمة give a great idea

| يسس النحدي | Olog. |
|------------------------------|-------|
| يستقل سفينة عائدا | |
| يستقل سفينة عائدًا برنكب خطأ | |
| | |

Word Differences

| | | Laismail | ربه جوی |
|---------|----------------------------|-----------|------------------|
| email | بريد إلكتروني | Cillianie | 1 |
| form | شكل | farm | ac. |
| | محطة وقطاره | stop | الماع وأتوبيس» |
| station | | | المن وملكية ه |
| special | خاص / مميز | private | |
| letter | خطاب | litter | L |
| | , , | | الم والبيع الكتب |
| library | مكتبة وللقراءة والاستعارةء | DOOKSTIEF | i |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Present | Past simple |
|---------|-------|-------------|---------|--------------|
| meet | يقابل | met | learn | leamt (leame |

prefer 1 > 'd rather · 'd prefer

أربعتني ويقضله ويأتى بعدها مصدر الفعل · 'd rather + inf. ex. I'd rather play basketball.

'd prefer + to + inf. / n

ش بمعنى ديقضل، ويأتى بعدها .(to + inf) أو (اسم n)

ما رأيك؟

ex. I'd prefer to play tennis.

ex. I'd prefer tennis.

2 > · v-ing

الله أفعال وتعييرات يأتي بعدما ٧- ing مثل: enjoy - يحب like - يستمع enjoy بفضل

look forward to

- How / What about ...?

ex. I enjoy playing tennis in my free time.

ex. I'm tooking forward to seeing you soon.

3 > · Countries

- هناك بعض الدول تكتب باسم مركب بالإضافة إلى اسمها المفرد، ويمكن كتابة الاسم المركب حروف فقط كالآتي:

The USA = The United States of America (America)

The UK = The United Kingdom (Britain)

The ARE = The Arab Republic of Egypt (Egypt)

الدظء

- يجب أن يكون الاختصار بأحرف كبيرة (Capital letters). - تستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الأسماء المركبة للدول.

Reading

Around the World in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article(1) about a new railway line(2) across India. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British(3) man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge(4) to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds(5) easy today, but at the time, there were no cars or planes.

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm(6) at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake(1): because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time(6)

Arabic Meaning ١- مقال صحفي ١- خو سكة حيد ۱- ویکانی ة – كعدى

14-b-9 4- في الوقت المحدد

8- يدو

Tapescript

: I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea. What

shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia: Why don't we go swimming?

: I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can do that at home. I'd rather do

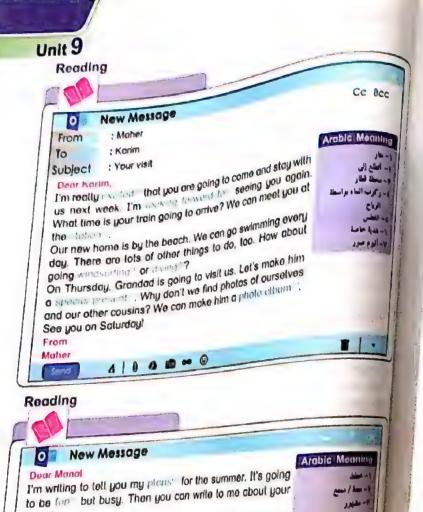
something more exciting.

Lamia: OK. How about going windsurfing?

: I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing... and it isn't very windy today.

Lamla: OK, not swimming and nor windsurfing... I know! Let's go kayaking.

: Good idea! I love kayaking.



ا-العاطئ

المرينا إسرينا

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're

going to take me to the terretus library. I'm very excited "

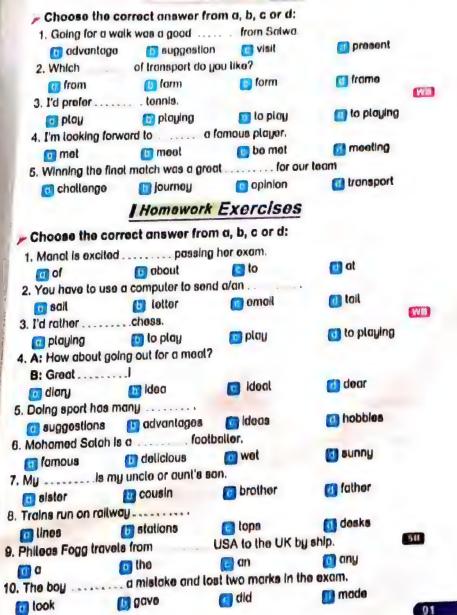
about that. It's a beautiful building. I'm going to go home on

22rd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play

Let's do some things transfer before we go back to school. What about

going to the beacht? You atways like swimming. Write to me scont so I know

tennis now, but I'm going be very good after the lessons!



Exercises Lossons (4) (5) & (6)

Chook Up Exorcisos

plansi

your plans!

From

Judy

يمل اقتراحات والردعلها

Making and responding to suggestions

| muking und responding | 1 | 2 A . 2 d a 1 221 . |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| A: Making suggestions: | خدم الأسئلة والتعبيرات الأتية: | ما رأيك؟ ما رأيك |

- What / How about + v-ing...?

ex. What / How about going on a trip to Fayoum?

LK?

- Why don't + فناعل + inf....?

ex. Why don't we paint the house green?

ماذا سوف نقعل....؟

- What shall we + فاعل + do......? ex. What shall we do at the park?

مل ستقمل؟

- Shall we + inf?

ex. Shall we go rock climbing?

سا بنا....

لا أوافق.

Let's + inf.

ex. Let's go home. It's going to rain.

والرد على الاقتراحات نقول:

| B: | Responding | to | suggestions: |
|----|------------|----|--------------|
| | | | |

| Agreeing | الموافقة | Disagreeing | است متأكدًا، |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|--------------|
| - Great idea! - That sounds good. | فكرة عظي <mark>مة ا</mark> هذا يبدو جيدًا. | The little and I'm not good at | |
| - I like that. | أحب ذلك. | ت جيدًا في ، | لا أعرف، لسد |
| - I knowl Let's + inf. | أعرف اهيا بنا | - I'd prefer + to + inf./ n. | أنضل |

- I disagree.

Exercises Language Functions



➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Osama: What shall we do tomorrow?

Emad : Shall we 1 _____rock climbing?

Osama: I don't know. I'm not very good at that.

Emad : I know! • play tennis. We're both good at it. Osama : Good 6

Emad: When will we meet?

Ernad : At 8 o'clock in the morning.

Osama: That's OK.

Excel Yourself

1 > Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. I prefer juice ____ Coca Cola.

than

10 rother

to

of for

2. The internet has advantages and _____

disadvantages D agreement

suggestions

10 disagreement

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I did the quiz myself. This means I did it lonely.

2. Playing football is my favourite happy.



How to write an email

﴿ الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email)

١- نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار. عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه :

To عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل From Subject:

٢- نكتب أسفل منهم (اسم المرسل إليه + Dear) يليه فاصلة (,)

٢- أسفل كلمة (Dear) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة للإيميل ٤- نكتب محتوى الإيميل

٥- نكتب خاتمة مناسبة ٦- ننهى الإيميل بإحدى العبارات الآتية:

- Goodbue.

- With my best wishes.

- مع أطيب تمنياتي. - أراك قريبًا / في يوم ... ،

- See you soon / on + day.

- من (اسم الراسل).

Cc Bcc

- From (name). - Yours, (name).

- المخلص لك، (اسم الراسل).

• وإليكم نموذج لرسالة بريد إلكتروني:

New Message

: tim505@yahoo.com

: zigdsamlr@yahoo.com : Mu favourite hobby

Dear Tim,

0

From

Subject

To

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?

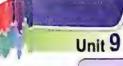
I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. My coach always encourages me. Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. I'm waiting for your email.

Goodbue. / With my best wishes. / See you soon.

Yours, Ziad







. لستخدم الكلمات الوابطة الأتية لربط الأفكار في موضوع الإنشاء:

الأن (تستخدمان للتعبير عن نسلسل الأحداد)

- when worth the from our
- ex. Let me finish the homework, then we'll play. يكن / بالدغم من (تستخدمان للتعبير عن التناتشر) ex. I walked to work. Now, I have a car.
- · but / although
- ex. I'm tired tut I can do the job. ex. 4 ma, gar I m tired, I can do the job.
- . لاحظ الفرق بين مكان الكلمتين

ن إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

An adventure sport

I like adventure sports. I like diving best. It's the sport of jumping into des water. It is an old sport. People can do it in clubs. They can also do it in riven but it is sometimes dangerous. Some people enjoy diving from boats. Diving doesn't need special equipment. But it sometimes needs special glasses. usually go diving with some friends at weekends. We do it in a club and spend a whole day doing it. We enjoy our time there. It helps us have strate bodies. It also helps us to be fit.

Transport today and in the past

People travel every day. It may be a trip to school, university or work. Travelling often take a long time. There are a lot of means of transport to use. Means of transport are faster, easier and more comfortable. Some people still like to travel short distances using bikes. I think many people prefer trains and planes. In the post people used animats. People used camels to travel on in the desert. Same people used horses and even elephants.

(3) A plan for a journey around the world

My uncle Samy is a pilot. He always travels around the world. He promises to will take me with him. I have a plan for the journey. First, I'm going to travel b Europe. I'm going to visit Paris in France. Then, I am going to travel to Spain and Germany. After that, I'm going to travel to America. I want to see many things there. We are going to travel on my uncle's plane. The journey is going to lake ten days. I am going it take photos everywhere. It will be fun.

General Exercises on Unit 9

| following dialogue | : | | WB |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------|---|
| ll we do on Saturday | 7 | | |
| **************** | | go rock climbin | g? |
| ire. It's quite dangero | us. I'd ② | .do a different a | ctivity. |
| about 1 | | baske | tball? |
| ow. I'm not very tall. | | | |
| ck climbing or basket | ballI know! Let' | s () | ennis. |
| | ! I alway | s enjoy playing te | ennis. |
| r will come with us. | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| rain. | | | |
| 15 am going to | are going to | going to | |
| joing to eat before yo | u do your homewo | rk this evening? | WB |
| b is | C Are | MA D | |
| | | sing in the mor | nings. |
| | | | WB |
| D pool | c equipment | adventure | |
| to make a | cup of tea? | | S8 |
| 10 herself | c ourselves | d themselves | 5 |
| | | | WB |
| | _ | | |
| | | | WB |
| | | _ | |
| | | | WB |
| _ | | fog | |
| | | | |
| - | | . returned | |
| | it we do an Saturday are. It's quite dangero about ow. I'm not very talt. ock climbing or basket ar will come with us. and's good. rrect answer from rain. o am going to going to eat before yo list p in a/an an pool to make a herself ne sea when it is sunny tike taking photos of ourselves acause there is no snow ng to the park but no | about (a) | we go rock climbin tre. It's quite dangerous. I'd |



Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d;

7 Are

10 to joining

of for home

of of

quick

d later

1 have

| | | بِنَّا السِّوَّالَ لَمَى لُغَرِ السِّكَالِ | المس السفاع المناص بو |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| The speaker is go next week | oing to try windsurfir | og | in the afternoon |
| 2. They will try wind morning | dsurfing in the | afternoon | o & c are correct |
| 3. They are going to diving | o ga | swimming | treikking |
| 4. They are not go | | ing C kayaking | diving |
| | P Language | Functions | |

2 > Complete the following dialogue:

| | total Where did you trovel? |
|-------|---|
| Hamdy | : Hi Samir. I know you were on holiday. Where did you travel? |
| Samir | : I O to South Africa with my fother. |
| Hamdu | : Wow! What did you do there? |
| Samir | : We went @ in the mountains. |
| Hamdy | : How was the 1 |
| Samir | : It was sunny. |
| | : Great! Did you enjoy Qthere? |
| Samir | : Sure, We enjoyed ourselves there. |
| Hamdy | : Did you 9 photos there. |
| 0 | . Ves here are some of them. |

Unit 9

to join

o about

quiet

litter

15. Whot

o shall

11. After I finish school, I go

we go shopping on Friday?

10. Why don't you ____ a sports dub?

10 Hove

ioining joining

😈 by

🕡 quit

D planes

we do this weekend?

14. Before emails, people used to send

T ore

3 > Read and correct the underlined words: 1. I hope I am going to have a car one day. 2. You all have to do your homework yourself.

3. Leila is going to exercise, she's very tired.

4. My little sister enjoys himself in the park. 5. Ahmed is going to sleeping in a tent. 6. This boy returns from school herself.

4 > Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Transport today and in the past"

13. Nada is a basketball player, she's

12. My grandpa has a beautiful house the beach.

ot home

g quite

letters

does





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Phileas Fogg was a rich British man living in London. He had a servant no seem are servent to the world in eight Passepartout. Fogg took the challenge to travel around the world in eighty a Fogg and Passepartout. Fogg and Passepartout reached the Suez Canal where he took a steamer to Bon India. They took in India. They took the train across India from Bombay to Calcutta. Then they got a steamer to Harris across India from Passepartout hired a saile steamer to Harris across India from Passepartout hired a saile steamer to Hong Kong then Yokohama, Japan. Passepartout hired a sailor to them to Shanch. them to Shanghai. They got to San Francisco and got on a train that took them to York. They got to York. They got the steamer to Liverpool, England. Finally, they hired an expression of the steamer to Liverpool, England. They arrived at the steamer to Liverpool, England. to get them to the British capital as quickly as possible. They arrived at the Landstation

| get them to the | Ditasi est | | E. |
|----------------------------------|--|----------------------|--------------|
| A. Answer the f 1- How many d | ollowing questions ays did Fogg plan to | travel around the wo | nd? |
| 2- Who was Fog | gg's servant? | | |
| 3- Do you like tr | ovelling? Why / Why | not? | |
| Contraction | separtout reachea (III | 8 | d Suez |
| 6- What is the Briti | | C London | a San Franci |

4 > Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| - Cilibara mia | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|------|
| 1. A/An | is a long trip from a | one place to another. | | |
| o picnic | b journey | c equipment | d tent | |
| 2. Why don't we | kayaking? | | | |
| go go | o going | o to going | d to go | |
| 3. We want to hav | e a/anto | show us the market, | because they | know |
| all the best place | ces to shop. | | * 4 | स् । |
| e tent | guide | @ adventure | 60 boat | |
| | | | | |

Vocabulary & Structure

| | na heard | his leg. He was plant | ng hurt | 1 helped |
|---|-----------------------|---|--|------------------|
| | | hat to protect | | |
| | g yourself | | | themselves |
| | 6. The children sof | by the fire to keep_ | | SB |
| | | b ourselves | | d herself |
| | | ant to go zip | | SB |
| | C links | C climbing | m biking | diving diving |
| | e I don't want to h | ave a/an | on holiday. I want to | sleep by a pool. |
| | @ weather | p equipment | guide | adventure |
| 3 | o Forgues going | to travel | | |
| 5 | | about | c across | 1 under |
| | cross | I'm sta | y at home by the fire | |
| | | | to go | d went |
| | going to | D go | | |
| | Read and corre | ct the underlined | words: | , |
| | 1. We all looked at | uourselves in the | school photo. | WB () |
| | 2. A carnel is going | to carried the food | and water. | SB () |
| | 2. A comet is going | non draw that or d | id you draw it myse | 117 |
| | 3. Did a famous per | ISOII GIGW GIGG OF G | | () |
| | | | | (|
| | | | | () |
| | 4. Hani can't drive t | his car <u>herself</u> . | | (|
| | 4. Hani can't drive t | his car <u>herself</u> . | | (|
| | | his car herself. | iting \\ | (|
| | | his car herself. | iting \\ | 1 |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\ | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |
| | Write a paragra | his car <u>herself</u> . E Write the work of EIGHTY (80) | iting \\\ b) words on: | () |

Test



لی استرالیا)

ن ملبورن (في إنجلترا)

الندقاء (في كندا)

Arabic Meaning

ببر میاه سیدتی

فارالأويرا

ليل مريع

58 pages 32-33 W8 pa





- 1

Arabic Meaning

١- كيلومتر مربع

New Message

Hi Amy,

Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kauaking.

I love water sports! I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Send





Women: Egypt is just over 1 million square kilometres(1).

: Australia is the sixth largest country in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

٧- چداو ۲-ساسح 4- سرفرز بارادیس وجاحة في أسرالها

Women: The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

: The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two Man thousand, two hundred metres high.

Women: The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, 51% hundred kilometres long.

: The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two Man thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles(3)

Women: In Egypt, the tallest building is the Cairo Tower. It is one hundred and eighty-seven metres tall.

: The tallest building in Australia is the Q1 building in Surfer's Paradise(4) Man and it is three hundred and twenty-two metres tall.



Review

author

harbour

Sydney

view

scary = frightening

Sudney Harbour Bridge

Sydney Opera House Surfer's Paradise



New Message

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge 1. It was very high and scary? But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie⁽⁴⁾ of ourselves!

Units 7, 8 & 97

"Key Vocabulary,,

selfie مؤلف

مرفأ (ميناه)

Countries, Cities & Places

Bondi Beach جسر ميناء سيدني

Melbourne دار الأويرا في سيدني

Chile مدينة سيدني (في إستراليا)

سيرفرز باراديس (ضاحية في أستراليا)

square kilometre

Blue Mountains

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera

House, but it is not opera, it is classical music! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Here are some photos!

Love, Amy







Listening \\

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| | | بُدُّا السؤال في آخر الكتاب | لص الاستماع الخاص به |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. The speaker w | ent to | Australia | (i) Asia |
| | sited Sydney | | a Lake |
| | very high and | old | 1 modern |
| | om the top were fan | ntastic. | buildings |
| Water | | e Functions | |

2 Complete the following dialogue:

| | • | |
|--------|--|--------------------------|
| Israa | : Hi Nadeen. What about going to the library? | |
| Nadeen | ; Good ① | ! Do you often go there? |
| | : Yes, I ② | |
| | : What ① | |
| Nadeen | | |
| Israa | | i 2 |
| Nadeen | : Is it a 🚳 | |
| | : Yes, it's a famous story by Daniel Defoe. | |
| Nadeen | : What are you 😉 | to read tomorrow? |
| Israa | ": I'm going to read another story by the same o | uthor. |
| Nadeen | : OKI I will come with you. | |

Review C Reading

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor a called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Arabic Mean Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotters than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile , is 24 hours away by boot. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Tapescrip

: Hi Lara. How was your weekend?

: Oh, it was terrible(1). : Oh dear, what happened?

: I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then missed

the bus so I had to walk home.

Girl : Oh dear!

Arabic Mean

Boy 1: I love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2: I'm afraid I don't agree

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2 : Why don't we go swimming?

Girt 1: I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near(2).

Girt 2 : OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1 : Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4 : I think it's the worst'31 book ever!



Review C

| 4- The underlined a Robinson Cru b Alexander Selvi 5- Alexander Selvi | usoe elkirk irk was a/an | d a sailor | animo |
|--|--------------------------------|----------------------|----------|
| a island 6- Robinson Cruso a Daniel | b Selkirk | Defoe y & Structure | d Ameri |
| 1. Iteight | rect answer fro | m a, b, c or d: | |
| a take 2. I like this book | b took | o to take | d taking |
| although | b but | becouse | os so |
|) | | | |

| | 3. There was alan | to find out | who could spell the | most words con | rectly. |
|----------|----------------------|--|----------------------|------------------|---------|
| | 0 | The state of the s | ,,,,o oodie op | | WE |
| | aquarium | D competition | population | 1 funfair | |
| | 4. My little brother | enjoyed at | the family party. | | WB |
| | g yourself | b herself | | myself | |
| | 5. At lunch time, I | go to the to | eat. | | |
| | canteen | 6 funfair | c library | d aquarium | |
| | 6. Sally was fright | ened when she watc | hed the film. It was | | |
| | 1 funny | (i) beautiful | c easy | d scary | |
| | 7. The fro | om the top of the Cai | ro Tower is fantasti | c. | |
| | n review | b view | Interview | dnene | |
| | 8. She asked me t | o look her t | oaby as she was to | o busy. | |
| | o after | D up | o down | d before | |
| | 9. A lot of ships ar | e waiting in the | | | |
| ı | market | aquarium [a] | narbour | canteen and | |
| | 10. I'm try | rock climbing next w | eekend. | | WB |
| | going to | b going | to go | d to going | |
| - | Boad and corre | ect the underlined | words: | | |
| 3 | 1 Mu house is lan | gest than my cousin' | s. | (| |
| 1 | 2. Soha is gone to | | | (| |
| 1 | 3. I don't need hel | p; I can do it ourselv | /es . | (| |
| 0 | 4. Do you complet | e reading the story y | esterday? | (|) |
| | | - Wr | ting \\ | | |
| A called | | | | | |
| 6 | Write a paragro | oph of EIGHTY (80 |) words on: | | WB |
| | | "A stor | you like" | | |
| 100 | | | | | |
| 9700 11 | | | | | |
| ۱ | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | |



Objectives

Reading:

Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world

Writing:

- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses

Listening:

A podcast about homes of the future

Speaking:

Saying what things are made of; predicting the future

Language:

is / are made of; there was / were; there will / won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years

Life Skills:

Creativity; good listening and self-expression

Scanned with CamScanner

Lessons 1

SB pages 34-37 WB pag

"Key Vocabulary,,

| | مرحبًا | material | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------|
| welcome | سطح (ميني) | round | ير الشكل |
| roof | صنبور (حنفية) | curtain* | į |
| tap | قوالب طوب | | |
| bricks cushion* | وسادة (مندة) | | |
| Cusinon | Mate | rials | _c os |
| Han* | قطن | glass | 3 |
| cotton* | _ | plastic | تيك |
| metal | خشب | wool | ف |
| wood leather | جلد مدبوغ | stone | <u>J</u> |

Vocabulary

| Cillad | كمبيوتر لوحي (تابلت) | scarf | ارب |
|---------------------|----------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| tablet | قىية | ancient Egypt | ىر القديمة |
| village | | the Stone Age | صر الحجري |
| living room | حجرة النمم | teaspoon | ىقة شا <i>ي</i> |
| bedroom | ىلەق | wall | ئط |
| jumper | | wallet | فظة (للنقود) |
| sofa | * | turn (ed) | ــ/ي دُّور |
| lamp | | paint (ed) | ين/يرسم بالألوان |
| seat pencil case | مقلمة | | |

Places

| Dais at Madina | the Valley of the Kings | the Nile valley |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Deir el-Madina | وادي الوامان (وقاء قريرة الله | ادي النيل |
| دير المدينة (قرية بالأقصر) | وادي الملوك (مقابر قديمة بالأقصر) | |



a hard, square(1) object that is used for building houses, walls etc.

Arabic Meaning
۱-مربع

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 10

roof
round
the top part of a building / a house
with a shape like a circle
something you turn to get water in the house, garden etc

Expressions

| What colour? | 3 |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| (be) called | ما لون؟ |
| paint (something) | يُسمى/يُدعى |
| paint (something) + colour | يلون شيء باللون |

Prepositions /

| | on the roof | |
|---|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| | on top of | لى السطح |
| | with red doors | الم نعة |
| | oven for bread | ان أبواب حصراء |
| | get from | ان الصنع الخبز ان الصنع الخبز |
| | The internotion dwuly | نن نصح بعمل على مع |
| | مترين | بهد حوالي كيلوا |
| _ | | |

Word Differences

| roof | Troil of the | Terences | |
|----------|-----------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| leather | سطح (مبنی) | ceiling | من حجرة (من الداخل) |
| wood | جلد مدبوغ | skin | من حجره (من العاص) |
| tap | | would | الجلاحي |
| lamp | صنبور (حنفية) | tape | نيل ئاقص |
| material | مصباح | lamb | شريط |
| 1 | مادة (خام تستخدم في صنع شئ) | subject | سل / لحم ضأن |
| P = 9 | 1 | | مادة (دراسية) |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present sleep | Past simple | Present Present | |
|--|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| - | slept | build | Past simple |
| (Particular of the Control of the Co | P | | built يبني |



1 > Materials used for making things

| wool | صوف | ₽ | jumper | بلواد | hat | | | |
|---------|-----------|---|--------|-------|----------------------|------|---------|----------|
| metal | معدن | Û | knife | | | قبعة | scarf | إيشارب |
| stone | حجر | 廿 | statue | تمثال | teaspoon building | | | ميارات |
| glass | زجاج | 1 | window | | glasses | مبنى | | فالب طوب |
| leather | جلد مدبوغ | 1 | shoes | حذاء | bag | مارك | -0.0011 | شاشة |
| | | | | | 2.5. | شنطه | wallet | المحفظة |

Lessons 1 & 2

| (1100) | قطن | D) | dress | فستان | skirt | جيبة | socks | جورن |
|-----------------|---------|----|-------|-------|--------|--------------|--------|-------|
| cotton | بلاستيك | ₽ | ruler | مسطرة | tablet | كمبيوتر لوحي | toy | لعبة |
| plastic wood | خشب | D | table | منضدة | chair | كرسي | window | نافذة |

2 seat • chair • sofa

- مقعد ثابت (في وسيلة مواصلات/مسرح/سينما) ex. I always leave my seat for old people on a bus.
- کرسي (يکون له ظهر) کرسي (يکون له ظهر)
- ex. Please, move that chair from the way.
- منبة ex. All of us like to sit on that sofa to watch TV.

3 glasses

- و والمادة لصنع الأكواب والنوافذ) ex. A window consists of glass and wood.
- وx. ۸ wildow contents of great and media.
- وب رجيجي ex. Would you like a glass of juice?
- نظارة ex. I can't see without my glasses.

Reading



Deir el-Madina

In ancient* Egypt⁽¹⁾, there was a village⁽²⁾ called Deir el-Madina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings⁽³⁾. There were 68 houses.

The walls⁽⁴⁾ of the houses were made of bricks⁽⁵⁾ and the doors were made of wood⁽⁶⁾. The people painted⁽⁷⁾ their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen⁽⁸⁾ and a living room⁽⁹⁾, but there weren't any bedrooms⁽¹⁰⁾. People usually slept on the roof⁽¹¹⁾ because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven⁽¹²⁾ for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps⁽¹³⁾. People got their water from the Nile valley⁽¹⁴⁾, about two kilometres away.



Arabic Meaning

٢-قرية ٣-وادى الملوك ٤---النا

١-مصر القديمة

- £--حوائط ۵--قدالب طدب
- ٧-خشب
- ۸-مطبخ
- ١-حجرات نوم
 - ۱۱-سطع ۱۲-فرن
- ۱۳-منبور (حقیة) ۱۹-وادی الیل



- * ancient
- * curtain * cushion
- 🕜 ينطق حرفي (Ci) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش). 💮 🔇 🔇 في ينطق حرفي (ir) في كلمة (bird) .
- ◊ ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل حروف (oo) في كلمة (book).

Unit 10



: What is a car made of?

Bon 5 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things. For example, a car door is made of metal⁽¹⁾ and the

windows are made of glass.

Boy 1 : What are the seats' made of, where you sit? Boy 2

: I think expensive car seats are made of leather(4). My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic(5).







Arabic K

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from

| | correct answer from a, b, c or a | 4. |
|---------|----------------------------------|----|
| 1. Most | windows are made of | ā. |
| | wildows are made of | |
| 100 | nal | |

- loow 🔟
 - to glass
- cotton
- Practice Test d paper
- 2. Don't forget to turn off the _____ after you finish cooking.
 - o tap
- **b** curtain
- c oven
- d roof

- 3. A car door is made of
 - o plastic
- **b** metal
- cotton
- d glass
- 4. A/An _____ protects a house from the sun and rain.
 - 100 roof
- **b** tap
- c oven
- **d** curtain

- 5. A ball is _____in shape.
 - a square
- **b** long
- cound
- d tall

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Cotton is a _____ which we use to make clothes.
 - **a** subject
- **10** material
- **metal**
- cushion
- 2. This ____ helps me sleep. It's very soft,
 - a curtain
- **D** roof
- Jumper
- d cushion

Lessons 1 & 2 3. What ----- dld they paint their house? SB o size tolour colour **o** price d height 4. A jumper is usually made of __ WB o wool b wood **6** metal **a** plastic 5. There weren't any cars in _____ Egypt. SB **ancient b** new **modern a** special 6. I'd like to _____ the walls of my room green. a call **b** pay o paint d look 7. A statue is usually made of WB **stone** b wool **leather** cotton 8. What is the material we use to make tables ____? a call **b** calling calls d called 9. You can turn the _____ to get water. WB oof [tap c oven d brick 10. It's dark in here, please open the

a curtains

bricks

d taps



made of / made from

- made of/__

الممكن (be) made of بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ويكون من الممكن التعرف عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع المواد الخام) بالصيغة الآتية:

المادة المصنع منها + is / are + made of + الشيء / الأشياء

ex. The sofa is made of leather.

ex. The cushions are made of cotton.

made from L

التعرف (be) made from بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ولا يمكن التعرف ex. This cake is made from flour. عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع مواد ليست خام) بنفس الصيغة السابقة:

لاحظ الأتى:

ex. This desk is made from an old door.

ex. This desk is made of wood.

• نى المثال الأول استخدمنا made from (be) لأن الباب تغير شكله فلا يوجد مقبض ولاشىء يدل على أنه باب وقد تم تقطيعه لعمل مكتب، أما في المثال التالي فيظهر بوضوح أن المكتب مصنوع من الخشب.

الاستفهام / Question

· نسأل عن المادة / المواد التي صنع منها شيئ / أشياء بالصيغة الآتية: # made of / from الشيء / الأشياء + made of / from

ex. What are cars made of?

ex. What is bread made from?

some & any

• نستخدم some بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة قبل الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد: ex. She bought some pens (اسم يعد) / meat (اسم لا يُعد).

لاحظ الأتى:

• يمكن استخدام some في السؤال في حالتي العرض والطلب.

ex. Would you like some apples? (عرض)

ex. Can I have some tea? (طلب)

السنديم any بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد. ex. I don't have any rice / apples. » Did you buy any pasta / pens?

| تستخدم مع | some | تستخدم مع | any |
|------------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| سؤال (عرض / طلد) | جملة مثبتة | سؤال | جملة منفية |

There is / was There are / were

Affirmative /

الإثبات

There is / was (للمفرد) الموجد المفرد)

يوجد/كان يوجد (للجمع) There are / were

• تستخدم There is / was مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد في المضارع والماضي كالآتي. • x. There is / was a pen on the table.

ex. There is / was some water on the floor.

• تستخدم There are / were مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع في المضارع والماضي كالآتي: • يستخدم There are / were some pens on the table.

Negative

في النفي

There is not (isn't) / was not (wasn't)

لا يوجد (للمفرد)

لا يوجد (للجمع) There are not (aren't) / were not (weren't)

ex. There isn't / wasn't a pen there.

ex. There weren't any bedrooms in that building.

Question

السؤال

Is there / Was there ...?

Are there / Were there ...?

هل يوجد...؟ (للمفرد) هل يوجد...؟ (للحمع)

ex. is there a carrot / an egg on the table?

ex. Is there any soup on the table?

ex. Were there any tomatoes?

• للاجاية المختصرة نقول:

Yes, there is / was - are / were.

No, there isn't / wasn't - aren't / weren't.

Exercises Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1> Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The television is _____ of glass and plastic.

SB

make

100 making

c to make

a made

| Unit 10 | |
|--|----------------|
| | and the second |
| Dencil cases made of? | d are |
| 3. The cushions was co's made of cotton. | — 4.0 |
| has made of cotton. | are |
| Wileh Taus | |
| 5. When we visit to the desert, there people. | is some |
| on Visited Deir al Mading there | pedrooms, |
| 2 Read and weren't isn't | d were |
| - dild comme | |
| 1. There wasn't some milk in the kitchen yesterday. 2. There isn't any books in the them. | 1 |
| 2. There isn't any books in that box. 3. The lamp is making of th | (|
| 3. The lamp is making of glass. | (|
| or glass. | SB (|
| 1. What is your new dress made Leila? | |
| 1. What is | |
| | |
| 2. There b at c of weren't pare any cars in ancient Egypt. | d in |
| weren't any cars in ancient Egypt. | |
| 3. Paper Dare wasn't | d was |
| 3. Paper o wasn't were of wood. | |
| of The state of Th | d 're |
| ore made 5. The table is made i plastic. was made i isn't made | |
| Another Street | d aren't mad |
| from b in Conf | |
| 6. I don't need suger, there isin my tea. | about |
| 7. Glasses b any one | |
| Oldes and alasti | d an |
| is made to | are made f |
| There any statues in that museum? | are made ii |
| 9. The wallet of leather. | d Has |
| is made | |
| 10. Scarfs are usually madewool. | d are made |
| at b in c from | |
| 2 Read and correct the underlined words: | d of |
| 1. There are too much salt in the food, I can't eat it. | |
| The state of the s | (|
| 2. The sofa is made <u>from</u> leather. | SB (|
| 3. There weren't some cars in the park yesterday. | (|
| 4. What <u>is</u> bridges made from? | (|
| | 1 |

CE COM

"Key Vocabulary,,

| 20 | الكهرباء | the moon | القمر |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
| electricity see electric | إشارة للكهرباء city | architect | مهندس معماري |
| electricity osign for electric | سيارة كهربائية | robot | إنسان آلى |
| electric car | توربينات الرياح | | صاروخ |
| wind turbines | | | كوكب الأرض |
| drivertess | طائرة بدون طيار | solar panels | ألواح شمسية |
| drone | | | |

Vocabulary Vocabulary

| Jonet | نشرة صوتية | 3D printer | طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------|----------------------|
| podcast | شاحن | afraid | خائف |
| charger | طرد بریدی | dream | حلم |
| parcel quest | | land telephone | تليفون أرضى |
| _{Droject} | مشروع | robot teacher | معلم آلی |
| _{ord} inary | _ | pilot | طيار |
| occident | | petrol | بنزين |
| machine | ماكينة | produce (d) | ينتج |
| post | بريد | talk (ed) | يتحدث |
| swimming pool | | express (ed) | يعبر عن |
| sofer | أكثر أماناً | | |

Words & Meanings

| driverless car | a car that can drive itself, without a driver |
|-------------------------------|--|
| سيارة بدون سائق | |
| | This machine can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot. |
| الكهرباء electricity | we can use the sun or the wind to produce this. |
| electric car سيارة كهربائية | a car that does not use petrol |
| obot انسان آلی | This machine can do many things for us. Some of them can talk. |
| | an object that can travel to space |
| الوحة شمسية solar panel | we put it on a roof. It produces electricity using the sun. |
| Wind turbines توربينات الرياح | machines that use the wind to make electricity |
| | someone whose job is to design buildings |

Unit 10

/ Expressions

design buildings produce electricity يصمم مبائي ينتج كهرباء

get electricity

work on a project

drive (someone) to + place يعمل في مشروع

يوصل (شخص) بالسيارة إلى....

بحصل على الكهرباء

Prepositions /

سفقساا دلو on the roof بعبش على القمد live on the moon

for a holiday

أبن أجل إجازة in + year under the sea

للمبيوتر اللوحى «التابلت» on tablets

Word Differences

rocket racket صاروخ robot electric rabbit انسان آلی ارنب electronic کھربی الكترونى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present fly

Past simple flew

Present

Past simple

read

anguage Notes

read

1 > • Word endings (-less)

- هناك نهايات تضاف للكلمات تغير معناها أو تعطي عكسها منها (less-) وأمثلة على ذلك:

driverless homeless

careless بلا قائد hopeless بلا مأوى

مهمل يائس

ex. We may use driverless cars in the future.

بطير

2 > earth

ground

· floor

earth

ex. We live on the earth.

كوكب الأرض / تربة

ex. The rain left the earth wet.

 ground ex. You shouldn't throw rubbish on the ground.

سطح الأرض «خارج المنزل / المبانى»

· floor

رضية والمياني والطوابق،

ex. There are a lot of things on the room floor.

3 drive ride

يقود (سيارة)

· drive

ex. I can drive a car easily.

يركب «دراجة - حيوان - أتوبيس»

Arabic Meaning

\$-سيارات كهربائية

٦-كيرباء

٧-ألواح شمسية

٨-توربينة رياح

• ١-طائرة بدون طيار

۱۱–طرود بریدیة

٩-إنسان آلي

· ride

ex. He always rides a bike to school.



: Hello, welcome to our podcast(1): Homes of the Future. Today we presenter

have a special guest⁽²⁾ - Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect⁽³⁾.

Hello Dina.

: Hello.

: What does an architect do? pina

Interviewer : Well, I design buildings such as houses or

schools. I think about what materials to use and Dina

I draw pictures of it.

: What are you designing at the moment? Interviewer : I'm working on a project for houses for the

future. They'll be a different to our houses today. Dina

: In what ways will they be different?

Interviewer : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the

future, but there won't be much space. So the Dina

garden will be on the roof.

: A garden on the roof, great! : And I think people will all use electric cars(4) in the future, so Interviewer Dina

there'll be chargers(5) for electric car next to the house.

: How will people get their electricity(6)?

: There'll be lots of solar panels(7) and a wind turbine* (8). They'll Interviewer Dina

make the electricity.

: Great. What else will be different in 2050? Interviewer

: Well, I think there will be robots(9) to do all the housework. Dina

: Fantastic! Will people use drones(10)? Interviewer

* turbine

: Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels(11) to the house. Dina

: What materials will the house be made of? Interviewer

: We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot Ding

of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

: Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us . I Interviewer

think I'll like living in this house!



🕜 ينطق الحرفين (ur) في هذه الكلمة مثل حرفي (ir) في كلمة (bird). وينطق حرف (i) مثله في كلمة (fine)

Unit 10

Reading



Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday. You will go to the go to the moon(1) There will be rockets(2) that leave Earth(3) every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be



Arabic Meanin

Driverless cars(4)



In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car. They will be safer(6) and there won't be any accidents(6). Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school.







Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. We put _____ panels on a roof. They produce electricity from the sun.
 - **b** sunny c stormu
- 2. This factory uses _____ to build cars. drones
 - **li** robots c rockets d pools
- 3. People will get _____ from the sun and the wind in the future. electric
- electrons c email 4. It doesn't need a driver; it's a ____car.
- - driverless **b** homeless careless
- 5. Will there be ____ cars in the future?
 - 🛅 electricity **b** windy
 - **music**
- **d** useless

d electric

d electricity

SB

SB

WB

d windy

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. We can use the sun or the wind to _____ electricity.
 - b express introduce
- d produce

2. Man could reach the moon using d turbines c rockets a panels: Tackets 3. There won't be any _____ cars in the future. SB **1** moral ordinary smart **15** modern 4. My father _____ me to school every day. designs designs o rides drives **b** flies 5.---- can do many things for us. 🕡 Rabbits Robots Rockets **1** Rackets 6. Wind ____use the wind to produce electricity. d turbines c robots o printers **b** panels WE 7. A/An _____ can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot. d electric car dream c racket **b** drone 8. A lot of things were prepared _____ the holiday. d for c over **b** on o to SB 9. A/An _____ designs buildings. **d** pilot **architect a** teacher **1** artist SB 10. I think we will live on the ____; it is a dream.



c ground

Making predictions عمل تنبؤات

(will / will not) for future predictions

15 earth

انظر الشرح في (Unit 9).

d roof

Examples

moon

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be ordinary mobiles.
- I think it will be not tomorrow.
- Will there be ordinary mobiles in the future?

119



Check Up Exercises

| 1 > Choo | Check Up | EXELCISES | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------|
| olloose the | correct answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| Triope we | to the moon in the | ne future. | Proci | ice Test |
| will go | b are going to | c went | d going | 4 |
| 2. People | all use electric ca | ro in the future | | |
| bluow 🔟 | b will | are | d were | SE |
| 3. I will go out to | onight, Istat | uic alc | | |
| won't | oriignt, 1staț | g at home. | | |
| | b didn't | c am not | d could | |
| T. My sister is 10 | 6. Next year, she | be 17. | | |
| | b was | will | d can | |
| 5. I think we | drones for pos | in the future | | |
| use use | b will use | | | WB |
| 2 > Read and cor | will use | used | d using | |
| 2 > Read and cor | rect the underlined | words: | | |
| 2 Today | having solar panels o | n planes in the fu | ture. WB (_ | 1 |
| | tust week. | | (| |
| 3. A: Would you | get your exam results | tomorrow? | (| |
| B: Yes, I will. | | | 4 | |
| | Homewor | k Exercise | (| } |
| Choose the co | read | LACICISE | 15 | |
| Choose the co | | | | |
| 1 we tra | vel to other planets in | the future? | | |
| O Have | b Will | Had | . d Did | |
| 2. Emad | be able to go to the | cinema because | he has no tickets | - 1 |
| @ won't | b didn't | will will | d doesn't | |
| 3. In the future, pe | ople to the | beach for holida | US They will go | |
| to the moon. | | | as Thay will go | WB |
| will go | b didn't go | won't go | d go | |
| | | | | |

| Mona will revise | e for her maths test . | a six not me me me me me me # | |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| gesterday | b last week | | d ago |
| 5. We hope we | enjoy oursel | ves in the park ton | ight. |
| will | b would | c did | d won't |
| 6. I help | p you carry your hea | vy bag. | |
| o have | b does | c will | d am |
| 7. Ola t | oe a doctor one day. | She is very clever. | |
| o will | b won't | can't | d couldn't |
| 2 Read and corr | ect the underlined | d words: | |
| | in the best player pr | | ch. () |
| 2. I hope my fathe | er will buy a car in th | e <u>past</u> . | () |
| 3. We're going to | watch a new film. I'r | n sure it is be very | exciting. () |
| 4. Amir promises | that he will helping | me with my homew | ork. () |
| 3 > Write a paragr | aph of EIGHTY (8 | 0) words on: | مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان |
| "What do you | ı think holidays wil | l be like in the yed | ar 2050?" SB |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| ***** | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | | |
| *************************************** | | | |
| ** | | | |
| | · | | |
| | | | |

Lessons

4,5 & 6

SB pages 40-42 WE

"Key Vocabulary,,

| round house | | | ,, |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------|--------|
| COOL | منزل مستدير الشكل | space | |
| rectangle | بارد | igloo* | (|
| rectangular | مستطيل | yurt* | للسكن) |
| rnangle | مستطيل الشكل | earthquake | |
| triangular | مثلث | circle | |
| warm | مثلث الشكل | imagination |) |
| | دافئ | | |

Vocabulary

| disadvantages | | | |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| traditional | عيوب | timeline | |
| size | تقليدي | drawing | لمح |
| events | حجم / مقاس | footballer | ۴ |
| temperature | أحداث | diagram | / تخطيطي |
| modern | درجة حرارة | technology | |
| suddenly | | European Champ | oions League |
| reason | فجأة | | ال الأوروبي |
| | سېب / تفسیر | | |

Countries, Cities & Places

| دولة كندا (بأوروبا) Canda | | a Faso | Mongolia |
|---------------------------|------|---------------------------|-------------|
| Mount Kilimangaro | قيا) | دولة بوركينا فاسوا (بأفري | |
| جيل کليمنجارو (بتنزانيا) | Siwa | واحة سيوة (بمصر) | the Red Sea |
| جبل هيمنجارو (بــو-يـ) | | (0 ./ 0 0 | مر (بمصر) |

| 10 | Words & Meanings |
|--------------------------|---|
| | a house made of ice and snow |
| بارد/ لطيف cool | a temperature(1) that is cold, but not too |
| earthquake زلزال | a natural ⁽²⁾ event when the ground suddenly moves |
| مستدير الشكل round | with a shape like a circle(3) |
| imagination خیال | using the mind(4) to think creatively(5) |
| مساحة /فراغ / فضاء space | an area that you can move around it |
| yurt کبیرہ للسکن | a large tent that people can live in |

Scanned with CamScanner

Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Expressions

| 11. | * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| heavy snow | جلید کثیف |
| avu rain | مطر غزير |
| warm / cool | يحتفظ بالدفء / بالبرودة |
| How fantastic! | کم هو راثع! |
| ride a bike | يركب دراجة |
| start school | يبدأ الدراسة |
| (he) born in | يولد في |
| draw / make a plan | يرسم / يعمل خطة |
| make work | يجعل شيئ يعمل |
| move house | ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزُّل) |

Prepositions 4

| move around | يتحرك حول / يتجول |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| around the world | حول العالم |
| in the past | في الماضي |
| in detail | بالتفصيل |
| fall from | يسقط من |
| think of / about | يفكر في |
| look like | يشبه |
| different to / from | مختلف عن |
| look out at | ينظر للخارج من |
| play for | يلعب لصالح |

Word Differences

| space | فراغ / فضاء | spice | تابل (من التوابل) |
|-----------|------------------|----------|----------------------|
| yurt | خيمة كبيرة للسكن | yacht | يخت |
| round | مستدير الشكل | around | حول / حوالي |
| reason | تفسير | cause | سپب |
| every day | كل يوم (حال) | everyday | يومي (صفة قبل الاسم) |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Present | | Past simple |
|---------|------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| mean | يعني | meant | bear | | bore |
| foll | يسقط | fell | / حیوان) ride | يركب (دراجة | rode |



Saying years

- عند قراءة الأعوام يمكن تقسيم "العام" إلى جزأين (أي يُقرأ كل رقمين معًا):
- ex. 2050 = twenty fifty
- ex. 1986 = nineteen eighty-six

• أو نقرأه بطريقة أخرى كالآتي:

- ex. 2050 = two thousand and fifty
- ex. 1986 = nineteen hundred and eighty-six

ان كلمات thousand / hundred تستخدمان في صيغة المفرد. المه المهادي المادة الأعوام من 2001 إلى 2009 نستخدم:

two thousand + number

ex. 2001 = two thousand and one

ex. 2006 = two thousand and six

ex.- 1066 = one thousand and sixty-six

- 3001 = three thousand and one

- 1923 = nineteen hundred and twenty-three - 2075 = twenty seventy-five

- 2008 = two thousand and eight

2 Comparatives

م ميفات المقارنة في Unit 8 وهذه أوثاة أخر

| 14100 | | ومين شرح للما والما الما الما الما الما الما الم | | | | | | |
|--------|-------------|--|-------------|--------|-------------------|---|--------------------|----|
| warm | دافئ | | warmer | أدفأ | few ليل | ₽ | fewer | 7 |
| | بارد / لطيف | 0 | cooler الطف | أبرد / | ماخب / مزعج noisy | ₽ | noisier المرازعاجا | 1 |
| nice | لطيف | 0 | nicer | ألطف | قدر dirty | | dirtier ندر | 1 |
| strong | قوي | D G | stronger | أقوى | cheap رخیص | ₽ | cheaper مغص | ار |
| quiet | هادئ | 0 | quieter | أمدأ | easy سهل | ⇔ | easier J | |

ويضا أن الصفة المنتهية بـ y تحذف ونضيف ier عند تكوين المقارنة.

، نذكر أن هذه الصفات تأتي معها كلمة than للمقارنة بين شيئين.

ex. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool.

ex. A round building uses fewer material than an ordinary building.

3 > Shape description

• من الممكن أن نضع المقطع (ular) إلى نهاية بعض الأسماء لتكوين الصفة منها:

| circle | دائرة | ₽ | circular | دائري الشكل |
|-----------|--------|---|-------------|--------------|
| rectangle | مستطيل | ↔ | rectangular | مستطيل الشكل |
| triangle | مثلث | 1 | triangular | مثلث الشكل |

الحظ أن هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم كإسم وكصفة كما هي:

| | - 1 | | | - |
|-------------|---------------|--------|------------|---|
| مربع square | \Rightarrow | square | مريع الشكل | |



Round houses around the world

Many traditional (1) houses in the past were round (2).

Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons (3)!

A round shape means the building is very strong.

This is important when there is an earthquake⁽⁴⁾ or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow⁽⁵⁾ or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm⁽⁶⁾ or cool⁽⁷⁾. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle⁽⁸⁾ or square⁽⁹⁾.

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make). It also has more space⁽¹⁰⁾ inside. How fantastic!







Arabic Meaning

۱ – تقلیدی

٧- مستدير الشكل

٣- أمباب / تفسيرات

٤ - زلزال

٥- جليد

٦- دافئ ٧- باود

Llarus -A

a. . . - 1

١- مساحة / فراغ



* yurt * igloo

ننطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (turn) مع اختلاف الصوتين الأول والأخير.
 ينطق حرف (i) في هذه الكلمة، مثل نطق حرف (egg) في كلمة (egg).



: Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events⁽¹⁾ in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!

I learned to ride a bike⁽²⁾ in 2013. I love my bike! In 2018, we moved house⁽³⁾. We live in Cairo now. in 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea. It was amazina!

In 2023 I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro - I hope so anyway!

Arabic Meaning

-أحداث

۲-يركب دراجة

٣- ينتقل لمنزل جديد

(يعزل)

Tapescript

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012. In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool, Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the European Champions League⁽¹⁾ with Liverpool.



Arabic Meaning



Check Up Exercises

| Choose the corre | ct answer from C | ı, b, c or d: | | |
|--|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-------|
| 1is an area | that you can move | ground in. | | |
| O Spice | Piece | | d Peace | Se |
| 2is nice t | emporature that is | hat but not too ho | | |
| Cool Cool | Cold | Marm | (d) Worm | SB |
| Cool 3. The ship's window | Lie sound 71 | in atranga | than a saus- | |
| 3. The ship's window | is round. This | is stronge | mon a square Wi | ndow. |
| o shop | b ship | chip | d shape | M |
| 4. A/Anh | Inners when the ar | ound suddenly m | ourbe | |
| and and and the | ialoo | - vologno | FT 111 1mh | SB |
| 5. The teacher aske | d us to use our | VOICUIIO | g gurt | |
| a station | temporature | and araw (| picture. | |
| | - Polataio | | d imagination | 1 |
| Character | Homework | Exercises | | |
| Choose the correct to 1. It's important to | ect answer from | - 1 | | |
| | | | k. | |
| | | | | |
| 2. My mother wants | to buy a new sofa, | but I don't think | we have | forit |
| space | house | | | WB |
| Tag promivers | 10 LIC WA | Prin. | task disk | |
| , which was a second of the se | To do | • | avnd 🔝 | |
| 4. Our living room wi | ndow is large and s | quare so we can l | ookof it. | WE |
| 5. Children in Egypt | b at | © out | d up | |
| a keep | b start | ut the age at six. | | |
| b. Salan is playing | Liverpool | of present | d finish | |
| O TO | 1 about | - before | | |
| 1 11110 (00(10 | ululi ule ulle v | VE TOOK LOST WAS I. | | |
| a easier | n easiest .: | Page 1 | | ł |
| o. My dant made as | some bredd dild y | vnen we ate it, it i | was still | WB |
| wormThis is a triangule | Cold | warm · | d modern | |
| a rectangle | | © circle | · · | WB |
| | <u> </u> | S. OLD | d square | |

Writing Skills



| Choose the co | nusic. dangerous | a, b c or d: | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 poor | b dangerous I'm alone. | c expensive | d traditional |
| 2. No one is di | home t me, he gave me a | homeless greeting. | d housing |
| - worm | D COLU | COLL | d warm |
| Read and corr | ect the underlined | words: | |
| In the large at | | | (|
| 2. We can make | old plastic <u>to</u> new bag | JS. | (|

Writing Skills

How to plan a creative writing task

- First, think of as many ideas as you can. What will the house look like? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun!
- 2 Then, decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
- Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. How can you make the ideas work? Make a plan (maybe in a diagram or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

(1) What do you think holidays will be like in the year 2050?

The world will change a lot in 2050. We will spend our holidays in a different way. We won't go to beaches. We will go to other planets or to the moon! We won't use planes. We won't drive our cars to go on holidays. There will be rockets to take us there. They will be very fast. The journey will take few hours. We will walk on the moon and see the Earth from there. Life will be different and enjoyable. So I hope I will live to try this. However, all this may be just dreams and may not happen.

OThings in your home

We all live in homes. We have many things, in our homes. All homes have rooms, bedrooms, living rooms, bathrooms and kitchens. All the rooms have doors and windows. They are made of wood and glass. We paint walls, doors and windows the colours we choose. Kitchens have many things in them. Although I don't know the materials most things are made of, I can use them. My room has many things in it. Everyone likes their home. I like my home very much.

🔞 A famous person

Mohammed Salah was born in 15 June 1992. He is an Egyptian footballer who plays for Liverpool in England. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He is one of the best players in the world. He is known for his speed. Salah started playing for an Egyptian club called El Mokawloon. He got many international prizes. He helped the Egyptian National Team to take part in the World Cup competition in 2018. He scores many wonderful goals with Liverpool. Many people in the world like him. All the Egyptians are proud of him.

General Exercises on Unit 10 2



1 > Complete the following dialogue:

| Yara | : Do you have | e a car, Yomna? | | |
|---------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Yomna | : Yes, I do. | | | |
| Yara | : What do yo | u think cars will b | e like in the 🕦 | |
| Yomna | | | | Cars. |
| Yara | | | | ve'll all use electric cars. |
| Yomna | | | | be driverless cars. |
| Yara | : I think so | | | |
| Yomna | : Life will be | different in the ful | ture. | |
| Yara | : I think we w | rill (3 | | under the sea. |
| Yomna | : I agree with | you. | | |
| - Choo | se the corre | ct answer from | a, b, c or d: | |
| 1. Do ! | jou know what | this T-shirt | made of? | |
| | ire | b were | have | dis |
| 2 | are usua | ally made of plast | ic. | |
| | _ | M Houses | Tubles | Toys |
| 0 | Cars | ns but there | any in the ki | tchen. |
| 3. I wa | nted to eat chi | wasn't | c weren't | (a) was |
| | 1070 | WOSIT | | |

General Exercises

| | | 1 | | WED. | | |
|-----------------------------|--|------------------------|-------------------|------|--|--|
| window is usu | ally made of wood | d and | -t-stip | | | |
| | | | o plastic | | | |
| gloss | any oil in that bo | ttle? | | | | |
| | b Is | (c) Has | Mere | | | |
| ⊘ Are | | ear? | | | | |
| 6. Who yo | - Lagran | a has taught | d taught | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| 7 The mechanic Wi | ill repa | iring my car tomorrow. | finish | | | |
| - c-lahos | in isining | to minor | | SB | | |
| o In 2080, we will I | live in cities | the sea. | - | | | |
| - ador | before | o benind | d about | | | |
| when, do you thi | ink, they | complete this bridge | ? | | | |
| owon't | b are | will will | Welc | _ | | |
| 10. In 2080, we will I | build houses usin | g 3D | • | SB | | |
| | D planes | c printers | d turbines | | | |
| of curs | of the house became wet because of the rain. | | | | | |
| | b leaf | c roof | d wolf | | | |
| loaf 12. Don't touch the | | | . (| | | |
| | | | d ice cream | | | |
| oven | b cushion | | | | | |
| 13. There are solar | | e buses for power nov | | | | |
| o planes | b panels | o plans | d planets | | | |
| 14. This blackboard | has as | shape. | | | | |
| o rectangular | ooler | c solar | d rectangle | | | |
| 15. Sit down, there is | afor u | you. | | | | |
| o peace | b sale | © space | d spice | | | |
| Read and correc | t the underline | d words: | | | | |
| 1. The curtains <u>is</u> m | ade from wool. | | SB (| | | |
| 2. There was any jui | ice in the fridge. | | (|) | | |
| 3. When is your bag | | | SB (|) | | |
| 4. In 2050, we <u>are</u> u | se electric cars. | | (|) | | |

| Unit 10 | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 5. In the past, cars | will run on water. | | (|
| TO UTO Drode | | olsh in the future. | (|
| 4 Write a paragrap | oh of EIGHTY (80 "Things in g |) words on: | ناحتمال لبة مند بر |
| | TEST 5 | JNIT (10) | |
| 1 > Listen. Choose | | ening \\ wer from a, b c or | d: |
| Many traditional triangular A round shape m | houses in the past | هذا السؤال في أخر الكتاب were | نص الاستماع الخاص ب |
| | m weak | tall | 1 strong |
| 3. A round shape is a earthquake 4 in the | volcano | here is a/an c storm | d rain |
| Schools | b Houses | Streets | O Pyramids |
| | B Languag | e Functions | |
| 2 Complete the fo | ollowing dialogi | 16: | |
| Ziad : Look at m | y things, Ashraf. | | • |

Ashraf: I see. You have a lot of things.

: They are made of wood.

: What are these pencils 1

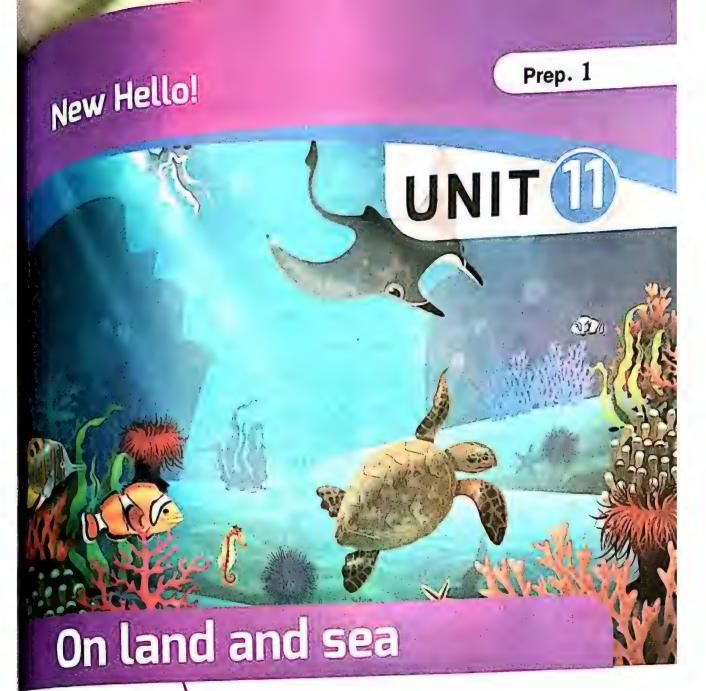
Ziad

Ashraf

| | : What @ | | this wallet mad | e of? |
|---|--|---|---|---------------------|
| Zlad | : I think it's made of 3 | | | |
| Ashraf | : I think it's made of g | | | |
| Ziad | ; What is your bag made of? | I thi | nk it is made of co | otton. |
| Ashraf | : I'm not @ | t till | | |
| | : Is your tablet made of plastic? | | | It is |
| Ziad Ashraf | : 6 | | | It is. |
| | Reading Compre | ehension | | |
| | the following and answer the quarter that the future will be very different. House | uestions: | | |
| Everyone around the children, the Every I more. The and every I think I robot drive tourism with A Answ | the future will be very different. House will have robots at home. House robots will drive parents to their place of person in a house will own a computer will have lessons on their computer each will watch TV on their computers. Deeple won't travel by car. Everyone wers. I think people will go on holiday to the the most popular type of holiday for the following questions: will houses be different in the future? | bots will do le hopping. They work. er. Students w very day. There will use electric to the moon in state in the future. | will help look after on't go to school e will be no televis | any ions with |
| 2. What | will house robots do? | | | |
| 3. Do yo | ou like to live in the future? Why/Why | not? | | |
| | se the correct answer from a, b, c o | r d: | | |
| | nderlined word " they" refers to uses | hings | d robots | |
| o ele | e will travel to the moon in sectric buses space rockets s | pace robots | d electric cars | |
| 6, | will drive buses and trains in the | future. tobots | Children | 131 |

Vocabulary & Structure

| 4 > | Choose !! | Vocabulary | Q Oll at | • |
|-----|--|---|-------------------|-------------|
| | 1. There | rect answer from | a, b, c or a: | |
| | | Thu commutere in the | post. | 63 |
| | @ were | b aren't | wasn't | WE Some |
| | | aren't nachines which can | do many things to | r us. som |
| | 3. This is a | b Robots | Rockets | 1 Tu |
| | 4. A famous Faund | triangular | circular | d cul |
| | 5. AVAn | ar do | expressed | d sig |
| | ordinary 6. Will there | b driverless | electric | (i) Win |
| | . Shoes are usua | ll | are are | d bee |
| | 8. We use | cotton | c glass | (a) leat |
| | 9. Some houses fe | b ovens ell to the ground afte | c roofs | d taps |
| • | spaceThis brush ismade | earthquake | earth | d tem |
| | 111240 | b making | made of | (d) mak |
| | The there any m | ect the underlined | ent Faunt2 | (|
| | Z. Willo ure you go | to Alexandria with n | ext weekend? | (|
| | 4. There isn't som | g of plastic and glass e water in this lake. | | (|
| | | E Wri | ting \ | (|
| 6 > | - Write a paragro | aph of EIGHTY (80 |) words on: | ، الامتحان) |
| | | "A famous per | son" | |
| | | | | |



Objectives

Reading:

A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea

Writing:

Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day

Listening:

A talk at a nature reserve

Speaking:

Talking about saving the environment

Language:

Zero conditional; must / mustn't; should / shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions

Life Skills:

Collaboration; setting clear goals

"Key Vocabulary,,

| coral reef(s) | 1 | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| danger(s) | شعب مرجاني (الشعاب المرجانية) | Nat | simo/ danie |
| shell | خطر (مخاطر) | | بحبا المبن |
| octopus | قوقعة/صدفة | poisonous | الله يات |
| sting | أخطبوط | stingray | مام مك الزّاى اللاسع |
| turtle | يلدغ / يلسع | shark | مك القرش |
| ocean | سلحفاة مائية | tail | |
| | محيط | whale | نپل |

Vocabulary Vocabulary

| sea animal | V 2000 | Jana. J | |
|------------|-------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| bee | ا حیوان بحری | nd | ارض الم |
| spider | he نحلة | avy | |
| hard | ice عنكبوت | | چېل |
| funny | jur | np (ed) | ئج ينلز |
| sea life | toı مضحك | uch (ed) | يعر |
| snake | tui حيوانات بحرية | n (<mark>ed</mark>) | بنعول |
| | العبان | ugh (ed) | بعرد |

Words & Meanings

| شعب مرجانى (coral reef(s) (الشعاب المرجانية | a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals |
|---|---|
| jellyfish قنديل البحر | a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through |
| سام poisonous | if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you |
| سمكة القرش shark | a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth |
| توتعة/صدنة shell | |
| يلدغ / يلسع sting | if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself |
| سمك الرَّاى اللاسع stingray | a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting |
| tail نیل | the part that is at the end of an animal's body |
| turtle مائية | a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back |
| whale حوت | the largest sea animal in the world |

Lesson

Expressions

يشعر بالمرض / بالتعب feel III / tired يشاهد التليفزيون watch TV يصل للمنزل

get home يؤدى اختبار get a test

one of the most dangerous..

واحدة من أخطر..

Prepositions 4

| Jump out of | يقفز خارجًا من |
|---------------|------------------------|
| in danger | في خطر |
| protect from | يحمى من |
| hit with | یضرب بـــ |
| on land / sea | على اليابسة / في البحر |
| go into | يدخل في |
| go to bed | يذهب للنوم |
| turn to | يتحول إلى |

Word Differences

| dangerous | خطير | danger | خطر |
|-----------|-------------|--------|------|
| sting | يلدغ / يلسع | string | خيط |
| live | يعيش | life | حياة |
| sed | بحر | see | ريرى |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | | |
|---------|--------|-------------|--|--|
| lose | يفقد | lost | | |
| grow | ينمو | grew | | |
| come | یأتی | came | | |
| wake up | يستيقظ | woke up | | |

| Presen | t | Past simple |
|--------|------------|-------------|
| hit | يضرب | hit |
| get | يحصل على | got . |
| forget | ینسی | forgot |
| sting | يلدغ/ يلسع | stung |



hard

يمكن أن نستخدم كلمة (hard) بأكثر من معنى حسب السياق

· hard (adj)

صلب / صعب / خشن

· hard (adv.)

- ex. The turtle has a hard shell.
- ex. I couldn't answer the question because it was hard.
- ex. You should study hard.

2 | fell / fall / fill

- · feel (felt)
- ex. I felt tired because I slept late.
- · fall (fell)
 - ex. He fell off the chair and broke his arm.
- · fill (filled)
- ex. Ahmed filled the glass with water.

Reading



Dangers of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean (1). If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20.000 teeth in its life.

So how do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger? A stingray⁽²⁾ is a big, flat⁽³⁾ fish and it lives in the ocean. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle(4) has a hard shell(5) to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast-The octopus⁽⁶⁾ has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life⁽⁷⁾, like the jellyfish⁽⁸⁾, is poisonous⁽⁹⁾. It stings⁽¹⁰⁾ you when you touch it.

What about the whale (11)? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails(12)!



Arabic Meaning

حقيا لمظمن

٨- قديل البحر

١٠- يلاغ- يلسع 11-20

١١- ديول

WB

SB

SB



* ocean whale

 ينطق الجزء الملون في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش). و تنطق كلمة (whale) مثل كلمة (sail) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول.





Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. A/An ____ can sting you.
 - **b** coral reef
- c ocean
- **d** stingray
- 2. A sea turtle has a hard _____ to protect it.
 - **a** shelf 5 shell
- **Ship**
- **d** shore
- 3. If something is _____, it can make you very ill or kill you.
 - **a** funny

turtle

- **b** tired
- poisonous
- d noisy

| | | | Lesson 7 | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|-------|
| 4 Large sea anin | nals live in the | ~ ~ ~ | | |
| രവി | porta | c pool | anal | |
| 5. A/An | has eight legs. | | | WB |
| stingray | b shark | whale | octopus | |
| | Homework | Exercises | | |
| Choose the co | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1. Some sea life, l | like the jellyfish, is po | oisonous. It | you when you | touch |
| įt. | | | | SB |
| o kicks | b stings | c rings | d grows | |
| 2. A ball is round. | It's not | | | |
| o funny | b dark | c noisy | d flat | |
| 3. A/An | is a large sea. | | | |
| ocean | b river | c lake | d pond | |
| 4. Thei | is one of the most do | ngerous sea anir | nals. | SB |
| crab | b turtle | c shark | d tiger | |
| 5. What can we do | o to protect ourselve | s bad v | veather? | |
| with | b from | © by | d to | |
| 6. I was | danger when the do | g attacked me. | | |
| on on | b from | c in | at | |
| 7. Tourists dive in | to the Red Sea to se | e the | | |
| a camels | oral reefs | c trees | a stars | |
| 8. I found many | on the beac | h <mark>and</mark> I played wi | th them. | |
| o sharks | b oceans | shells | d ships | |
| 9. A monkey has a | long | | | |
| o tail | neck | o nose | d shell | |
| 10. What should w | ve do tose | a life? | | |

a hate

o harm

d protect



The zero conditional

الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية

Form

التكوين

If / When → present simple, → present simple

عندما / إذا - لو

مضارع بسيط

مكن أن تأتى if / when في وسط الجملة.

present simple → If / when → present simple

الاستخدام / Usage

. تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث دائماً بشرط عند حدوث فعل آخر.

ex. If it rains, we get water.

= We get water if it rains.

ex. When it's late, I feel tired.

= I feel tired when it's late.

٢- حدث في المضارع البسيط وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

ex. If / When I'm tired, I go to bed.

= I go to bed if / when I'm tired.

٢- للتعبير عن حقائق (ترتبط بالطبيعة / والفيزياء والفلك....)

ex. If you heat ice, it melts.

٤- لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط من فعل (have / has) هو (have / has) ومن فعل (be) هو (am / is / are).

ex. If she has much money, she buys clothes.

ex. Ali sees a doctor if he is ill.

لاحظ الأتي:

 ١- تستخدم when مثلها مثل if في الحالة الشرطية الصفرية. ex. If / When ice gets warm, it becomes water.

٢- للسؤال بمعنى (ماذا سيحدث إذا.....) في الحالة الصفرية نستخدم:

?... فعل في المضارع البسيط + فاعل + what happens if / when

ex. A: What happens if / when we put ice in the sun?

B: It becomes water.

Lesson 1



Check Up Exercises

| . Choose the co | rrect answer from | na,b,cord: | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|----|
| If you touch a je | ellyfish, it | jou. | | SB |
| sting | b stings | stung [] | stinging | |
| 2. When a stingra | y a shark | is coming, it jumps o | out of the water. | SB |
| knew | b know | knowing | 1 knows | |
| 3 a sh | ark loses a tooth, it | grows a new one. | | SB |
| But | b If | Where | What | |
| 4. The octopus sw | rims away fast | it's in danger. | | SB |
| o why | b what | 6 when | d how | |
| 5. Plants die if the | y enough | water. | | |
| a don't get | b get | o doesn't get | got got | |
| Read and corr | ect the underline | d words: | | |
| 1. I drink where I | | | (|) |
| 2. If I didn't know | an English word, I | use my dictionary. | (|) |
| 3. When a turtle <u>b</u> | e in danger, it goes | into its shell. | SB (|) |
| 4. When it was ve | ry cold, water turns | to ice. | WB (|) |
| | [Homework | Exercises | | |
| Choose the co | rrect answer fron | n a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1I feel | ill, I go to the docto | or. | | |
| o When | (b) What | Where | d Why | |
| 2. If ice becomes | warm, we | water. | | |
| getting | b gets | c got | d get | |
| 3. When I | hungry, I have s | omething to eat. | | SB |
| © was | b were | am am | d be | |
| 4. If we are noisy | in class, our teacher | <mark>r usuall</mark> y | IS. | SB |
| o punish | D punishes | punished | d punishing | |

Unit 11 5. If it _____ very hot, I turn on the fan. d are **b** was **were** 6. If I feel tired, I _____ to bed. going going d goes 7. If I my pencil case, I often feel sad. went o forgot SB d forgetting **b** forget 8. When I _____ill, I go to bed. o forgets o feels WB **b** felt d feel feeling 9. If my sister ____ a lot of TV, she feels tired. watches **b** watch **d** watching **©** watched 2 Read and correct the underlined words: 1. If I was thirsty, I drink water. 2. When the phone rings, I answered it. 3. What I feel hot, I turn on the fan. 4. Kenzy feels ill if she travel on a boat.

5. If it is dark, I couldn't see.

Lessons 2 & 3 SB pages 46-49 WB pages 101-102

"Key Vocabulary

| .1 | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| environment | بيئة | throw away | يتخلص من |
| planet | كوكب | rubbish | قمامة |
| fishing line | صنارة | recycle (d) | يعيد استخدام |
| noture reserve | محمية طبيعية | | |

Vocabulary

| everywhere | فی کل مکان | Ras Mohammed reserve | حمية راس محمد |
|--------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| plastic | بلاستيك | around | حوالي / تقريباً |
| ule | قانون / قاعدة | knife (knives) | سكينة (سكاكين) |
| raffic rules | قواعد المرور | careful | حريص |
| paper | ودق | school work | عمل مدرسی |
| dirty | قذر/متسخ | home | منزل / موطن |
| through | خلال | visit (n) | زيارة |
| decision | قرار | save (d) | ينقذ |
| own | ملكِ | share (d) | يشارك |
| grass | حشائش | die (d) | يموت |
| piece | جزء / قطعة | frighten (ed) | يخيف / يرعب |
| shopping bag | حقيبة تسوق | clean (ed) (adj) | ينظف / نظيف |

| Words & Meanings | | Words | & Meani | ngs |
|------------------|--|-------|---------|-----|
|------------------|--|-------|---------|-----|

| | | | Arabic Meaning |
|----------------|----------|--|--------------------------------|
| environment | البيئة | the world around us | |
| recycle تخدام | يعيد است | use again | ۱ - بتخلص من ۲ - بصطاد سمکة |
| rubbish | قمامة | things we do not need, like old paper | |
| throw away من | يتخلص | get rid of ⁽¹⁾ what you do not need | |
| nature reserve | P .P . | an area of land used to protect nature, ar | nimal and plants |
| لبيعية إجادات | محمية | | |
| fishing line | صنارة | a thin line used to catch a fish(2) | |
| planet | كوكب | where we live | |

Expressions

about 100 years old

take a long time

years old

years

years old

years ol

Prepositions /

use... for for a long time die from get rid of at the same time on roads پارك... مع share.... with famous for ينهور ب take... from المن من بعبرإلى داخل walk into بغلع ملابس take off bad for angry with غاضب من agree with بنفق صع

Word Differences

| | ينقذ / يوفر | safe | Ů |
|----------|--------------|---------|-----------|
| save | يعيد استخدام | cucle | رکب دراجة |
| recycle | کوکب کوکب | plant | نبات |
| planet | حوكب | dia out | ينقرض |
| die from | يموت من | die out | |

Verbs & Nouns that come together

| do activities | يعمل نشاطات | make decisions يتخذ قرارات | share ideas بنشارك الأفكار |
|---------------|----------------|---|--|
| take turns | يتبادل الأدوار | throw rubbish يلقى قمامة | feed birds يطعم الطيور |
| make noise | يُحدث ضوضاء | follow traffic rules منابع قواعد المرور | recycle plastic يعيد استخدام البلاستيك |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Prese | nt | Past simple |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|------------|-------------|
| throw away | يتخلص من | threw away | take off | يخلع ملابس | took off |
| take | يستغرق | took | give | يعطى | gave |



1 take

- يمكن للفعل (take) أن ياتي بأكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة: يركب (مواصلة) / يلتقط (صورة) / يستغرق (وقتاً) / يأخذ

ex. She takes her shopping bag to the market. take

ex. It will take a long time to answer the test.

ex. I took many photos at the zoo yesterday.

ex. He takes the bus to school.

2) stop + to + inf / stop + ing

. stop + to + inf.

ex. He stopped to have a drink.

·stop + v-ing

ex. He stopped smoking.

3) paper / glass

· paper/ a paper ex. Books are made of paper.

ex. My father reads the papers every day.

• glass / a glass

ex. Windows are made of glass.

ex. I'd like a glass of water.

Reading

We must save our planet!

Plastic(1) is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment(2) for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years add! We can recycle(3) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean(4).

Plastic is poisonous(5) when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other materials(6) - paper and glass, for example - because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag(7), we mustn't throw away(6) these bags in rivers. It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish⁽⁹⁾ from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet(10)!



Arabic Meaning

1- اللاستك

يتوقف كي يفعل

يتوقف عن فعل

ورق / جريدة

زجاج / كوب زجاجي

٦- مواد خام

۸- يتخلص من 2014 -9

٠١- كوكب

143



Teacher:

We're going to visit this nature reserve today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here, so we must be

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise! You'll frighten(2) the animals and birds. Secondly, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes(3),

Now I know we're going to have a picnic⁽⁴⁾ lunch later, but you mustn't give and food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think

that all their food will come from you! Next, you must take all your rubbish(5) with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it, it is very bad for

Finally, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can

write about your visit to the reserve for the project.



reserve

م ينطق حرف (S) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (Z).

Reading



Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed reserve(1) is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs(2) here

to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must pay around LE I 00. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives(3) to cut fishing lines(4) and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful!



Arabic Meaning

Arabic Mea

١- محية راس محما

٢- الثعاب المرجالية

۲-مکاکن ا- صنارة

Exercises Lessons (2) &

I Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is the world around us.

o plastic

6 environment

rubbish

d natural reserve

Lessons 2 & 3

| 2. We can - | ruddish (| ana get a lot of | money. | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| throw | b die | 0 | cycle | o rect | ycle |
| 3. Earth is o | ur | | | | |
| - nlant | 15 plate | c p | olanet | a plan | |
| wa mustr | 't plastic | bags in rivers. | | | |
| f-a. | - throw | OWOLL TO | ike oli | a wake | e up |
| ahmed is | helpful. He always | nis i | deas with ou | 1615. | |
| 5. All shares | b loses | c to | uches | d forge | ts |
| 0 0110 | | ork Exerc | ises | | |
| | | | | | |
| Choose the | correct answer | from a, b, c | or a: | | |
| 1 We | Of Lapping in pa ba | tung it in tracin | | To feel tire | ad |
| | | | | d feel tire | s u |
| a paper and g | lace are ensier to i | ecycle than | | | |
| 2. Paper dir | b water | c plas | tic | SOIL | n plastic |
| g un | b water more than 100.000 | sea animals a | nd birds | IFOI | n plustio. |
| 3. Every goon, | | | | | |
| en die | buy | c live | the section at | a stay | WB |
| A Trees are ver | y good for our | because | tney give us | road | |
| | environing | all brage | | road | WB |
| 11 1 | feight III | at go around to | 10 0 | plants | |
| | | | | plants | WE |
| 6 We don't need | that dirty piece of p | paper. You can | put it with th | e | · <u>Mad</u> |
| vicenmor | y 🕟 beach | . plunet | | | WB |
| 7. You can see bi | rds and animals in | the Ras Monar | nmed | • | |
| O hand | C ocean | reserve | | 11101 | father |
| 3. Osman never | all the dec | isions by himse | elf. He alway | s asks nis | julier. |
| makes | b does | © gives | d | looks | |
| A: I think our te | am will win. B: I do | n't agree | you. | | |
| on on | m with | from | . 📵 0 | of | |
| 0. The students to | keto ans | swer the questi | ions. | | |
| turns in turns | 6 trains | trees | o to | bles | |
| 1. Don't throw awa | y those glass bottle | es. We can | them | 1. | WB |
| o cycle | | cook | o he | | |
| | | 9 555 | | | |



must / mustn't, should/shouldn't التُعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام/النصيحة

must + Inf.

منفام (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

ex. We must save our planet.

mustn't + Inf.

نتخدم (mustnrt) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهى / التحريم (في المضارع).

ex. We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

3 should / shouldn't (for advice)

نندم (should / shouldn't) للنصيحة كما يلي:

مصدر الفعل .should / shouldn't + Inf (كل الضمائر) فاعل

Affirmative /

اثبات

النصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

ex. We should recycle more.

. النفي / Negative should not (shouldn't) النصبحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم،

ex. We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

• Question السؤال /

، للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

?....مصدر الفعل + inf. فاعل + Should

ex. Should I write my name on my paper?

- Yes, you should.

- No, you shouldn't.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

?...مصدر الفعل.Inf + فاعل + should + كلمة استفهام

ex. When should I start to revise for the exam?

- Three days before the exam.

لاحظ الأتى:

• لا تستخدم (to) قبل مصدر الفعل الذي يأتي بعد must / mustn't - should / shouldn't واعلم أن المصدر من (am , Is , are) هو (be) ومن (have, has) هو (have)

وس رحس الموروس وس رحس الموروس وس رحس الموروس وس رحس الموروس وس رحس الموروس وس رحس الموروس الم

ex. He must have his calculator with him.

• في النفي ضع (not (n't) مباشرة بعد (must / should) وليس بعد الفعل. must go not X must not (mustn't) go. ✓



| A | Check Up | Exercises | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------|
| 1 Choose the | listen to other stude | m a, b, c or d: ents' ideas. | 3 | |
| 1. You | b shouldn't walk in the mountain must | mustn't mustn't mustn't | d can't er is bad. It's dang | jerous. |
| 2. You | must plastic. It | can is very bad for th | em. | SB |
| 3. The animals. 3 should | eat plastic. It mustn't | must A car may hit you | a. | |
| 4, You | play games on roads. b should | mustn't | | SB |
| 5. You | share your ideas with mustn't | | a can't | |
| 2) Read and cor | rect the underlined v | vords: | (|) |
| 1. You should sto 2. We mustn't to | udying hard. make a lot of noise at h | ome. | | / |
| | Homework Ex | | | |
| 1) Choose the co | rrect answer from a, | b, c or d: find a safe pl | ace to cross. | WB |
| must | a road, first you b shouldn't | can't | mustn't | 147 |

| | | a road. |
|---|---|-----------------|
| 2. Youlook le | eft and right when | you cross a ros |
| mustn't | o can't | @ must |
| 3. We throw and should 4. You shout in the should and should and should and should and should and should and should be should | way rubbish in rive mustn't n the classroom. can see a doc mustn't | should tor. |
| What I should do if I You shouldn't eat he You must cross the re You should eat too m | ealthy food. Dad. It's dangerous Dany sweets. It's u | s. nhealthy. |
| 3 > Write a paragraph of "How | EIGHTY (80) w we can help our | environment" |
| | | |

Lessons

5B pages 50-52 WB pages 103-106

"Key Vocabulary,

| | إناء | seed | بذرة |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------|----------|
| pot | تربة (زراعية) | fisherman (fishermen) | صياد سمك |
| soil | أرض | worried | قَلقِ |
| ground | ضعيف | respected | محترم |
| weak | هيكل عظمي | respect (ed) | يحترم |
| skeleton | فتحة / ثقب | cover (ed) | ريغطي |

Vocabulary

| doon | مق ۲ سم | plastic material | مادة بلاستيك |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 2 cm deep | كياس قمامة | f plastic rubbish | قمامة من البلاستيك |
| nubbish bags | واة ثمرة/ حبة مكسرات | plastic pot | إناء بلاستيك |
| nut | مجموعات محلية | healthy | صحي |
| local groups | محطة الإذاعة المحلية | gloves | قفازات |
| | مساحة فارغة | posters | ملصقات |
| empty space advertisement | إعلان | tiny | صغیر جدًا |
| 1 | إصبع اليد | teaflet | منشور / کتیب |
| finger | | press (ed) | يضغط |
| How deep | عظمة | fish (ed) | يصطاد سمك |
| brave | شجاع | return (ed) | يعود / يرجع |
| headphones | سماعات الرأس | water (ed) | یروی «بالماء» |
| snack | وجبة خفيفة | | ريسحب |

| ^{day} bha irray bo a dha a a a | # # # # # # # # # # # | Words & Meanings |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| bund | أرض | the top part of the Earth, where we stand |
| ال (ئيداين) | تربة | what plants grow in |
| الله بند ا | فتحا | an empty space in something |
| ASL L | لمغر | put something over something else to protect or hide it |

a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants a small container

Expressions

keep the dir healthy الهواه keep water clean wake a phone call يجري مكالمة مانفية make a sandwich

make something from recycled plastic

يصنع شيرا من البلاستيك معاد الاستخدام يلعب رياضة أو لعبة a epod or game

يلمب رياضة أو لعبة play a sport or game يشعر بالقلق أو العبة

fool weak مشعر بتحسن fool well

more than ever المتعافي

get well مصطاد سمك

Prepositions //

at the bottom of

at the end of

took at

fill ... with

cover ... with

on the beach

on headphones

for a long time

pull.. to / into

Verbs & Nouns that come together

catch

catch a fish یصطاد سمکة catch a plane, train or bus یصطاد سمکة لیسی بلحق بطائرة / قطار / أتوبس

يصاب بمرض معالم

معنی علی لص معنی اور معنی علی لص

catch a ball

يعسك بكرة

Compound Nouns

ا نستخدم بعض الأسماء والصفات سويًا لنكونُ اسم جديد مركب (compound noun)

• أحيانا يكون الاسم متصل وأحيانا أخرى يكون منفصل مثل:

محمية طبيعية nature reserve الشعاب المرجانية fishing line صنارة recycled plastic

jellyfish قنديل البحر

Word Differences

 pot
 pin
 pin

 skeleton
 هيكل عظمى
 skull

 fish
 ميكل عظمى
 hunt

hid

saw

Past simple

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| present | Past simple | | Pre | sent |
|---------|-------------|--------|------|--------------|
| catch | يصطاد | caught | hide | يختفي / يخفي |
| (80l | يشعر | felt | see | یری |

| @ ? | |
|------------|-------|
| anguage | Notes |

too much / too many

- · too much
- ex. Don't give the plant too much water.
- · too many
- ex. It's bad to eat too many sweets.

كثير جدًا (يأتي بعدها اسم لا يُعد)

كثير جدًا (يأتي بعدها اسم يُعد)

Reading



Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy(1).

You can plant a nut(2) or the seed(3) of a fruit.

1. First, wash the plastic pot(4) and dry it.

2-Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.

3-Then, fill the pot with soil (5).

4 Next, press⁽⁶⁾ your finger into the soil and make a small hole⁽⁷⁾ about 2 cm deep.

5-Plant the seed in the hole and cover(8) it with soil.

6-Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.

7-Water(9) it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)

8-When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.



Arabic Meaning

- ٥- تربة (زراعية)

 - ۸- ينطي
 - ۹- بروی



Adult : Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to

keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

Child: What should I do first?

Adult : First, wash an empty plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small

stones at the bottom of the pot.

Child: Then what should I do?

Adult: Then, fill the pot with soil.

Child: Like this?

Adult : Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press your finger into the soil

and make a small hole.

Child: How deep must it be?

Adult : It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover

it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. The seed needs

sun and water to make it grow.

Child: Should I water it now?

Adult: Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to

grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted

that"!

Reading



The Old Man and the Sea

by Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman(1). He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton(2).

Arabic Meaning ١- مياد سمك ٢- فيكل عظم ٣- لجاع ا-يحرم

He felt weak and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave(3) to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected(4) him more than ever.

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Reading



We must clean our beach!

1. Where and when is the event?

- . West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. 5 p.m.

2. What do we need?

- rubbish bags, gloves(1) (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks(2) to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones(3)!

3. Why must we clean the beaches?

- _100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event?

- posters(4) (around school and town)
- emails to local groups(5)
- -local radio station(6) or newspaper

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- recycle it
- find a new use for it
- make art with it

Exercises (4), (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The top part of the Earth, where we stand is the

WB

o floor

d floor

o hole

sky

ground

g sed

WB

2. Plants grow in ____

b soil

c sail

a mail

WB

3. A _____ is an empty space in something.

b pole

c ball

ole role

4. He gets high marks so I _____ him.

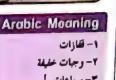
o protect

15 respect

recycle

a plant

153



| [| small, hard thing mad | de by plants, which | grows into new pla | JUP |
|------------------------|--|---------------------|--------------------|--------|
| o soil | b pot | stone | seed | |
| | [Homework | | | |
| Choose the co | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1. A lot of | catch fish from the | Red Sea. | engineers | |
| teachers | b nurses | ig fishermen | | VB |
| 2. My grandmothe | nurses er is 85 and knows a l | ot! We all | d throw | |
| a hate | b respect | o dislike | nen he didn't phor | ne her |
| 3. Ahmed lost his | phone, so his mother | was · · · | | MB |
| | - Largeting | worried | excited | WE |
| 4. Judy felt very | after she wa | is itt, but she | active | |
| weak 5. In the museum | b strong , we saw a | of a very old anim | nal. Its bones we | re ve |
| big. | b hole | seed | skeleton | |
| 6. I planted the se | eeds in a plastic | ground | d hole | |
| 7. I usually eat | b seeds | snacks | d socks | |
| 8. Some people like | ke listening to music of the listening to the listeni | c headaches | o negamas | sters |
| 9. To put somethi | ng over something e | lse to protect or | hide it is to | |
| dry | D plant | cover cover | d water | |
| 0. We plant seeds | in the | | | |
| oil oil | (b) sand | c soil | d floor | |



Ask for and give instructions

للسؤال عن التعليمات التي يجب اتباعها نقول:

- . What should I do first / next / after that?
- . Should I (water it now)?

للإجابة وإعطاء التعليمات نستخدم الكلمات الآتية:

- · Like this?
- . First, / Second, / Then, / Next, / Finally?
- · Yes, that's right!
- . Yes, you should. / No, don't (give it too much water).



Exercises Language Functions



Complete the following dialogue:

WB

| toto the following | 10 |
|--|------------------------|
| Complete the following a tomato plant. | What should I do first |
| rid like to grow a torridto prant | |

find a sunny place in the garden. Mariam : 0----

Mariam: Yes, that's right. 2----, look at the ground. It must not have lots of

stones or other plants in it.

: OK. What should I do after that?

Mariam: 3 -----, make a small hole in the soil.

Lama : How deep must it be?

Marlam: About 2 cm. 4 -----, put some water in the hole so it is not dry.

Lama : Should I water it now?

Mariam: Yes, you should. 5 -----, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

Excel Yourself

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. If a shark _____ a tooth, a new one grows.

o misses

loses

forgets

gets

ride

2. How can we get _____ of plastic?

b drive

c rid

3. You must stop ____ your time. 🕠 to waste

wastes b waste

d wasting

d hide

2 > Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What Ahmed must take with him to school?

2. You shouldn't to throw away rubbish in the street.

3. If I feel sad, I usually will watch a movie.

Writing Skills

نفران انشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 How we can help our environment

We must do our best to help our environment. There are many ways to do that, $_{W_{\!\!\!e}}$ can plant trees and flowers. We can use bikes instead of cars and buses. We mustny throw away rubbish in rivers. We must recycle rubbish. Some people visit parks and beaches and leave a lot of rubbish there. This is very dangerous. It can kill animals and birds. There are people and companies that work on cleaning these places. They help their countries and help the environment as well. We must look after our environment

Why it's important to recycle

Recycling is one of the best ways to get rid of rubbish. It is important to both the environment and us. Some materials stay in the environment for a very long time. If we just throw them, they will take a lot of space. They may be poisonous. They may harm animals and people. Many countries build factories for recycling materials. They produce new materials. People can buy these products in low prices. Recycling these materials will bring a lot of money. Recycling will save our planet.

A person you respect

My neighbour Salah is a farmer. I respect him. He is very polite and good to others. He has a farm. He gets up early in the morning and goes to his farm. He works hard there till sunset. He grows vegetables and fruits. On Fridays, Salah goes to the market to sell his plants. Everyone in our village likes and respect him because he is always helpful to them. He always gives poor people some of the plants that he grows. I like to go and visit him. I like talking to him very much. He always advises me on how to be a good farmer. I learn many useful things from Salah.

neral Exercises On Unit 11?

| Complet | te the following d | lalogue: | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------|
| sama : V | What are you readin | g, Israa? | | |
| Israa : I' | m reading a story. | | | |
| sama : W | /hat's its 🕧 | | | ? |
| Israa : Ti | he Old Man and the | Sea. | | |
| sama : W | hat does it tell us al | | | |
| israa : It t | lells us about a goo | | | |
| sama : Dic | any one 🔞 | | ********* | him? |
| : No. | , he caught it alone. | | | |
| arma : Did | he sell it in the 🕢 - | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | ? |
| . No. | because sharks 👩 | i | t and left it just a sl | keleton. |
| choose the | correct answer f | rom a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1 W | ve hear something fo | inny, we all laugh. | 14 (h n n | |
| What | 15 Who | © Whose | @ When | |
| 2 When I | home from sch | nool, I take a showe | r | |
| a got | b gets | e getting | g ger | |
| 2 It's VEIU | to swim in are | as where sharks exi | st. | |
| a funny | and homes as a second | o noisy | d dangerous | |
| 4 Don't eat this | food, it may be | | | |
| good | (D) delicious | o poisonous | d tired | |
| 5. A stinaray is a | big, fish. | | | SB |
| o fit | b flat | c tiny | a small | |
| 6. Some spiders of | are dangerous. They | attack and | _ people. | |
| 0 kick | b protect | sting sting | d turn | |
| 7 I feel | tired, I have some re | est. | | |
| When | b What | Mhere | M Why | |
| | to catch fish | | | |
| o pipes | b bottles | c lines | a jackets | |

| 9. Alexandria is for its fine weather. 1 sorry b noisy c famous 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must be careful a careless b helpful c useful 12. The test was difficult, so it me a long time to answer it. 13. Many animals have People do not have one. 14. A is the biggest and heaviest sea animal. 15. Flowers and trees are good for our because they give us clean or environment coceans 16. Flowers and trees are good for our because they give us clean or environment coceans 17. If I woke up late, I go to school late. 18. If I woke up late, I go to school late. 19. If I woke up late, I go to school late. 20. If people didn't eat well, they become weak. 31. When my father is at home, we kept calm. 42. I always laughed when I watch that film. 43. You should are helpful. | 6. If I didn't wear a jacket, I feel cold. | (|
|--|---|---|
| 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must be careful a careless belieful a long time to answer it. 12. The test was difficult, so it me a long time to answer it. 13. Many animals have People do not have one. 14. A list he biggest and heaviest sea animal. 15. Flowers and trees are good for our because they give us clean at environment capacity. 16. Flowers and trees are good for our capacity. 17. If I woke up late, I go to school late. | 3. When my father is at home, we kept calm. 4. I always laughed when I watch that film. 5. You should are helpful. | WB (|
| 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must be careful a careless belieful a useful a careful a careless belieful a useful a talked a gave below a difficult, so it me a long time to answer it. 12. The test was difficult, so it me a long time to answer it. 13. Many animals have people do not have one. 14. A sist he biggest and heaviest sea animal. 15. Flowers and trees are good for our because they give us clean of trains a environment boceans a banks and trains are pooled. | 1. If I woke up late, I go to school late. | |
| 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turtles. 11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must be careful a careless belieful a careful a car | 14. A is the biggest and heaviest sea animal. 14. A is the biggest and heaviest sea animal. 15. Flowers and trees are good for our because the environment because the company of the property of the p | a stingray |
| | 10. Tourists go to see the beautiful fish and turting diving by driving riding 11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must a careless by helpful reserved by helpful reserved a long time to a did | d running st be careful inswer it. d talked |

5





| Listen and choose the corr | ect answer from a, b c or d |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|

| , | | ل سؤال في اخر الكتاب | نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا ا |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1- The shark is o | sed | | |
| a bird | b plant | animal | insect |
| 2- The shark is v | ery | | |
| - cofe | b aangerous | o funny | d weak |
| 3. The shark lives | s in the | | |
| ocean | D river | c sky | jungle |
| 4- Its gro | w all the time. | | |
| 1 legs | b teeth | c fins | d heads |
| | | Functions \ | |
| | Landuade | FullChons N | |

2 Complete the following dialogue:

| Habiba | : Can I ask you some questions, Mrs Sara? |
|--------------------|---|
| Mrs Sara | : Mat do you think the most dangerous sea animal is? |
| Habiba | : I think it is the @ |
| Mrs Sara Habiba | : The shark! But why? |
| Mrs Sara | : 1 it has got very sharp teeth. |
| Habiba | : So how do sea animals protect themselves from sharks? it sees a shark. |
| Mrs Sara Habiba | : Some sea animals jump out of water 4 it sees a shark. : What about whales, these big heavy animals? |
| | : I don't think they need to protect themselves ⑤ sharks. |

Reading Comprehension \

3 F Read the following and answer the questions:

Earth is mostly covered by water. Water covers about 70% of our world. Many plant and animals live in the water.

Lakes are small areas of fresh water on land. They are freshwater. They fill in with river water, rain, springs or water that comes down hills and mountains. Water in lake gets to the sea by rivers. In the sea it mixes with saltwater.

Seas and oceans are large areas of water. They are saltwater. Different kinds or animals and plants live in saltwater and freshwater. Seas can also be very deep sometimes miles deep! You can find whales, sharks, dolphins, stingrays and jellyfix in saltwater.

| Answer the follow 1. What is the passo | | | |
|---|------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| | | | |
| 2. What are lakes? | | | |
| 3. How much of the | | y water? | |
| B. Choose the corre | ect answer from a | ı, b, c or d: | |
| 4. The underlined was plants | b lakes | oceans | d seas |
| 5. Water in seas an | d oceans is mixed milk | sugar | d oil |
| 6. You can find who | b rivers | in hills | d oceans |
| | Vocabulary | & Structure | |
| Choose the cor | | | |
| 1. We don't need to | hat dirty piece of p | aper. You can put it | with the |
| nomework | rubbish | c planet | 1000 |
| 2. In the museum we | e saw ao | f a very old animal. Its | bones were very big. |
| 1 hair | brain | skeleton | d heart |
| 3. Osman is a | He catches | s a lot of fish. | |
| (ii) teacher | b fishrman | o doctor | d farmer |

161



Objectives

Reading:

A interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future

Writing:

A paragraph giving information about the future

Listening:

A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans

Speaking:

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

Language:

Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional

Life Skills:

Productivity: set clear goals



"Key Vocabulary,,

| 1100 | اَلة | meeting | اجتماع |
|--|--------|---------------------|--|
| machine | محرك | | |
| engine | Jo | bs | |
| accountant computer programmer photographer architect engineer | 12,000 | scientist writer | طبار عالِم كاتب رجل أعمال سيدة أعمال |
| dentist | V/oc | abulary | |

Vocabulary

| | | | يضي | ا مر |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------|
| | | مكتب (مكان) | عني sick people | - 1 |
| | Office | شيق | | |
| , | interesting | شخص | plane | - 1 |
| | person | امنني | photograph | |
| | building | الاعب كرة قده | wheelchair | |
| | footballer | مقالة | voluntarii work | |
| | orticle | برنامج كمبيوتر | score (d) يحرز | シ |
| | mounter programme | 55 e | | |

| | Words & Meanings Arabic Meaning |
|--|---|
| architect معماری | a person who designs buildings |
| بجل أعمال business man سيدة أعمال businesswoman | goes to meetings |
| computer programmer | a person who writes computer programmes |
| dentist طبیب اسنان | a person who looks after(2) people's teeth a person who studies or works with science |
| عالِم scientist عالِم engineer مهندس | a person who designs(3) machines and engines |
| محاسب محاسب | a person who works with money and numbers a person who takes(4) photographs for a job |
| مصور فوتوغرانی photographer writer | a person who takes photographs a person who writes books or articles(5) |

Expressions

one day

I'd like to be

ارید أن أکون (اصبح)

take photographs

یحل مسائل

یحل مسائل

ایطئر طائرة

fly a plane مطيّر طائرة design (buildings / machines / engines)

یصمم (مبان / ماکینات / محرکات) (approximate approximate)

write (articles / computer prográmmes) یکٹب (مقالات / برامج کمبیوٹر)

يقوم بعمل تطوعى do voluntary work

live next door

Prepositions

look after

work in an office
in a wheelchair

work with money
on the phone
on TV

good at

Dast simil

Arabic Meaning

Word Differences

plane مائرة plan teach يدرّس learn

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| | | Same Same | Present | tenar annihite |
|-------|--------------|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Pres | sent | Past simple | ·la | flew |
| take | يأخذ / يلتقط | took | ال fly علير write كتب | wrote |
| teach | يدرس | taught | Wille | |

Tapescript

Male : He looks after people's teeth. He's a dentist(1).

Male : She studies science. She's a scientist(2).

Male : He's a person who designs machines. He's an engineer(3).

Male : She works with numbers. She finds out how much money a business gets. She's an accountant(4).

Male : He takes photos. He's a photographer⁽⁵⁾.

Male : She works in an office and goes to meetings. She's a businesswoman (6).

Male : He writes computer programs. He's a computer programmer⁽⁷⁾.

Male: She writes books or articles. She's a writer(8).

Male : She designs buildings. She's an architect(9).



Randa: It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to do a lot of sums. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

Reading

My uncle has got a very interesting⁽¹⁾ job. He's an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines⁽²⁾ and engines⁽³⁾. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one uncle designs a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A day! My aunt is a businesswoman and a businessman⁽⁴⁾ are people who work in an office and go to meetings⁽⁵⁾.



Exercises (1) Lessons (1)

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

o writer of pilot

3. Kenzy is a/an _____. She takes a lot of photos.

accountant bengineer architect photographer

4. A/An works in science.

engineer scientist architect writer

5. A/An _____ designs buildings.

o engineer or architect odentist od pilot

Homework Exercises

| | | ord: | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Choose the co | rrect answer fro | m a, b, c or a. | of goals. |
| 1. Mohamed Salo | ah is a famous | He scoles | of footballer |
| pilot 2. A/An | o dentist is a man who work | s In business. | d businessmon |
| scientist | footballer looks after people's | teeth. | accountant |
| | - destict | teacher books and articles. pilot | businessman |
| 5. I fly planes. I'm | a/an pilot | architect | d accountant |
| 6. A washing | washes your clo | G Mee. | @ plane |
| 7. A/An | designs machines ar | 6 Brigineer | d teacher |
| 8. There's somethin | ng wrong with the | co keyboara | engine engine |
| 9. I had an importan | ot with my n | nanager yesterday. greeting | meeting |
| 10. My aunt is a | | | d pilot |
| businessman | businesswomar | 100tbatter | Pilot |



Relative pronoun (who) ضمير الوصل (who)

• تستخدم who لتحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذي - التي - الذين - اللاتي» (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها فعل):

ex. A businessman is a person who works in an office.

• وقد تستخدم لتحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير):

ex. Kareem, who we met, is an architect.

تذكره

١- تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى الأشياء والحيوانات (غير العاقل):

ex. The story, which I read last night, was interesting.

٢- تستخدم (where) لتشير إلى المكان:

ex. We visited Ali in Luxor, where he lived.

٣- تستخدم (when) لتشير إلى الزمن:

ex. This is Alexandria in 1990, when my parents lived there.

٤- تستخدم (whose) لتشير إلى الملكية (يأتى بعدها اسم مملوك لاسم قبلها).

ex. Mr Adel, whose factory makes clothes, is very rich.





Check Up Exercises

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A teacher is a person _____ teaches students.

SB

SB

SB

- **b** where
- **who**
- **d** which
- 2. Here's the present _____ I bought yesterday.

when

- **15** which
- who
- **d** where

- 3. A scientist is a person _____ studies science.
 - c when
- **M** where

who

- **b** which

- 4. That's the lady _____ bag was stolen.

whose

- **b** where
- when

5. A pilot is a person _____ flies a plane. which

which

- **b** when
- **where**
- **d** who

167

2 - Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. Mr Omar is the teacher when teaches us English.
- 2. That's the car who my dad bought.
- 3. Mariam is the girl where can run fast.

| Homework Exercises

1 - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| 1. That is the medal | _ I won in the race. | d where |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| when by when 2. I met the player | scored the goal. | a which |
| 3 The teacher teach | ches us maths is file. | d when |
| where bwh There is the hospital | I was born in. | d whose |
| 5. The boy likes bas | sketball is tall. | ohs. Sa |
| 6. A photographer is a person | ere who | which |
| = = identicathe dall | I meet my friends. th | whose on the phone. |
| m who mic | n whore | d when |
| 9. Hany is the boyli | @ WHICH | (i) where |
| 10. This is the scientist | | d when |
| Read and correct the und | | () |
| 1. That is the school which I le | |) |
| 2. The person when helps me | a lot is my father. | (|
| 3. I don't know where takes my | pen. | () |

"Key Vocabulary,,

| | | result | نثيجة |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| marine biologist | عالم أحياء مائية | ocean | محيط |
| laboratory | فظيع | test (ed) (n) | <u> ریختبر /اختبار</u> |

Vocabulary

| | | | محيط الاطلنطي |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| | مدينة نويبع | The Atlantic | صيحة |
| Neweiba | | advice | |
| especially | غاية | | طقس |
| forest | وظيفة الأحلام | Australia | ستراليا |
| _{dream} job | | French | للغة الفرنسية |
| interesting | | interview (ed) | يجرى مقابلة |
| different | | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| around | شعاب مرجانية | | يسجل |
| coral reefs | السعاب مرجانية | volunteer (ed) | يتطوع |
| research | | dive (n) (ed) | غوص / يغوص |
| useless | | | |
| poring | ممل | | |

| and the state of t | Words & Meanings Arabic Meaning |
|--|---|
| marine biologist | a person who studies the ocean and the |
| | animals and plants in it علماء علما |
| test , rich | check or do a scientific bexperiment |
| | something |
| laboratory daen | a place where scientists(3) work and do experiments |

Expressions

Prepositions /

good at

at the moment

on some days

on the computer

results of

learn about

volunteer for

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past simple | Present | Past simple |
|---------------------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| يقضى وقت/ينفق spend | spent | forget | forgot |



1 > · forget

• forget + to + inf.

ex. I'm sorry, I forgot to call you.

• forget + V-ing.

ex. I forgot calling Ali, so I called him again.

ينسى أن يفعل ... (أي أن الحدث لم يتم)

ينسى أنه فعل ... (أي أن الحدث تم)

2 > spend

• spend + وقت + V-ing.

يقضى وقتًا في ...

ex. Marine biologists spend their time studying sea animals.

• spend + money + on + n.

ينفق مالًا على ...

ex. The government should spend more money on education.

Reading



My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist.

1. What's a marine biologist?

A marine biologist⁽¹⁾ is a person who studies the ocean⁽²⁾ and the plants and animals in it.

2. Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

3. What's your day like?

In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs⁽³⁾. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory*(4). I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results of tests.

4. What's the best thing about your job?

My research (6) helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

5. And what's the worst thing?

There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather (7) is terrible (6). It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm(9)!

* laboratory

ينطق المقطع الأخير (tory) مثل كلمة (tree).

Arabic Meaning ١- عالم أحاء بحرية







Nesma



Presenter: You visit some interesting places, don't your?

: Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia.

And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter: Wow! And what different kinds of animals do you study?

: Well, some marine biologists study large animals, Nesma

like whales(1) and dolphins. But I study fish and

smaller animals around coral reefs.

Presenter: It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist,

but it isn't an easy job, is it?



ا- حتان





: No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect(2) and record(3). It's hard work and it takes a long time. Nesma I work about ten hours a day. Presenter: What is your advice to young people who want to : Work hard at school, especially in Science. You have to love become a marine biologist? science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you can Nesma about the job. You can even volunteer(5) for dives. Presenter: That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma. : You're welcome. Nesma Exercises Lesson (2) Check Up Exercises Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: MB 1. I didn't like the film. I thought it was d funny c interesting **1** terrible good good 2. Mariam got the _____ of her test. She did very well! W/B phones c results sports obs jobs 3. A marine biologist _____ water from the ocean in the laboratory. 📶 asks onswers a tests **a** tastes 4. A/An _____, for example the Atlantic, is bigger than a sea. WB d ocean pond **b** lake river 5. I like this story. It's interesting d bad **b** terrible **10** boring Homework Exercises 1. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a _____. WB marine biologist computer programmer **dentist** d businessman 2. I'm good ____ maths and English. for **b** to c at d on

| | | | Lesson | _ |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|-----|
| 3. The | of the match was | amazing. Our tear | n won 5-0. | |
| result | onswer answer | o test | o storm | |
| 4. I went | in the Red Sea | and I saw coral re | efs. | |
| a diving | climbing [Discountries] | c driving | 1 singing | |
| 6 [we | ll in my exams and | got high marks. | | |
| made. | took | o did | d gave | |
| The scientist di | d lots of tests in the | 9 | | WB |
| | 700 | park | a bank | |
| marine biol | ogist'she | elps to protect the | plants <mark>and</mark> animals in | the |
| ocean. | nesearch | c whale | meeting | |
| ocean | restanday. The wes | | | |
| | yesterday. The we | G fellipre | | |
| fine g. The tourists enjoy | jed watching the co | oral in th | e Red Sea. | |
| | reefs | surfaces | d results | |
| roofs 10. A: What is the | like today? | | | |
| B: It's quite hot. | @ weather | c sky | @ moon | |
| Bit 4 | P Bit | | | |
| V | | احجز نسختك | | |
| ä | ية النهائي | المراجد | | |
| | الأول الإعدادى ت – امتحانات | الصف | | |



Question tags

السؤال المذيل

منفع السؤال المذيل للتأكد من معلومة ما أو للسؤال عن معلومة ما ويعنى (أليس كذلك؟). بأنى السؤال المذيل آخر الجملة ويتكون كالآتى:

? ضمير يعبر عن الفاعل + فعل مساعد أو ناقص ,....

إلى الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفى والعكس صحيح.

a positive statement جملة مثبتة + a negative question tag مؤال مذيل منفي You are a student, aren't you?

يأتي ضمير الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد

a negative statement جملة منفية + a positive question tag

Mary isn't a teacher, is she

إذا كان الفاعل اسم يحول إلى ضمير فاعل

ex. Omar can sing a song, can't he?

ولتحديد الفعل المستخدم مع الضمير في السؤال المديل يتبع الأتي:

- إذا كان بالجملة فعل مساعد / ناقص نستخدمه بعد تحويله من المثبت للمنفى والعكس:

am / is / are / was / were / can / could / will / would / should / may / might / must

- ex. It's really important to look after our plant, isn't it?
- ex. Osman can speak English, can't he?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة أحد الأفعال المساعدة / الناقصة السابقة نستخدم don't / doesn't / didn't إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة:

s بسیط بدون s بسیط بدون , don't? , don't? , doesn't? , didn't?

ex. Ali plays well, doesn't he?

وأما إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ don't / doesn't / didn't استخدم صيغ الإثبات do / does / did.

لاحظ الآتي:

۱- تحول (I'm) في السؤال المذيل إلى (aren't I) بينما (am not) تحول إلى (am I):

ex. I'm going to win the match, aren't I?

ex. I'm not able to answer the test, am I?

r - إذا جاءت scarcely / seldom / hardly / few / little / never في الجملة تكون الجملة منفية ويكون السؤال المذيل مثبت.

ex. Samir never travels to England, does he?

٢- لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

not = n't / will not = won't / cannot = can't

ex. Sameh won't come, will he?

ex. Ola can't speak Chinese, can she?

٤- لاحظ أن الاختصار (S') هو اختصار للفعل (is):

ex. He's eating now, isn't he?

(is + v-ing)

٥- تذكر أن كلمة (there) تظل كما هي في السؤال المذيل:

ex. There is a big fish here, isn't there?

٦- عندما تستخدم الأفعال (did - does - do) و (had - has - have) كأفعال أساسية يكون السؤال

- ex. They have breakfast early, don't they?
 - Ali has a nice car, doesn't he?
 - Omar had a walk yesterday, didn't he?
 - She does her homework every day, doesn't she?
 - Amal did the shopping yesterday, didn't she?

Exercises (2)



Check Up Exercises

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-He's fast, ----- he?

WB

o is

🛅 aren't

Was

isn't

2-Ahmed doesn't play football, -----?

don't they

b doesn't he

does he

1 he does

3- You live in Cairo, ----?

are you

m don't you

didn't you

do you

4-He needs rest, ----- he?

isn't

10 aren't

doesn't

don't

⁵ I'm good at English, ---- I?

mp 📵

1 are

🕝 aren't

🔐 isn't

SB

| Read and correct the underline | d words: | | |
|---|---------------|-----------------|-----|
| | | WB (| , |
| 1. They aren't tall trees, aren't they? | | (- | |
| 2. Our teachers are very helpful, don' | t (heyr | (| ٠. |
| 3. You don't like coffee, are you? | | | ٠٠. |
| Homework | Exercises | | |
| 1 Choose the correct answer from | a, b, c or a. | 3 do 11 | 0 |
| 1- You like sweets, do you? odidn't odesn't | o do | d don't | |
| 2. It is bot todayit? | isn't | aren't | |
| 3- Too many sweets aren't healthy for your aren't | isn't | weren't | |
| 4- She practises the piano every day, | o doesn't | d wasn't | Vie |
| 5- Ali can't speak English, | e he con't | can't he | |
| 6- That bag is too heavy to lift, | is it | isn't it | S |
| 7- Ashraf doesn't play football, | does he | d he does | |
| 8- They are nice girls, | they aren't | aren't they | \$8 |
| 9- Smoking can make you ill, | | a can it | |
| 10- Hossam has a good car,? In hasn't he doesn't he | don't he | isn't he | |
| 2 - Read and correct the underlined w | ords: | | |
| The weather wasn't fine, is it? Your brother can't play the guitar, can s | | (| |
| 3. Salwa sleeps early, didn't she? | | (| |
| Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) | words on: | | |
| "Your dream | ı job'' | | |
| | | | • |
| | ****** | | • |
| | | | |

"Key Vocabulary,,

| | ا تعلیم | Kenua | دولة كينيا |
|------------|--------------------|----------|---------------------|
| education | . معلیم عامعة | | دولة غانا |
| university | aām C | | نقافة |
| apartment | Cd مهارات | olourful | زامی الألوان سلة |
| skills | bo ورشة | osket | الفخار |
| workshop | pd مجوهرات | ottery | ريكسب |
| jewellery | ed شخص بالغ / راشد | rn (ed) | |
| odult | Vocal Vocal | bulary | |

Vocabulary

| | - | 1.1dia | بسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |
|----------------|------------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| | -ولة | social media | |
| country | امتحان | team | ريق |
| exam | غاضب | Kenyan | كينيّ الجنسية |
| angry | | | خاتم |
| player | • | necklace | عقد |
| present | تقليد/عُرف | | قدرة |
| tradition | تقلیدی | | رسم |
| troditional | | belief | اعتقاد |
| modern | | travel (led) | يساقر |
| market | | | يتغير |
| enough | ٥ | change (d) | يأمل |
| day | h صلصال | | يمارس |
| flying | p الطيران | ractise (d) | 1 |
| local business | p عمل تجاري محلي | ass (ed) | ينجح |

| , | Words & Meanings | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| earn يكسب | get money by working Arabic Means things such as poskinges(1) and rings(2) that | | |
| aجوهرات jewellery | things such as necklaces(1) and rings(2) that you wear | | |
| شخص بالغ adult | a fully grown person | | |
| ورشة workshop | a room or small building where people make or repair things | | |
| مهارة skill | the ability(3) to do something well | | |
| culture ثقافة | the art(4), ideas, beliefs(5), etc. of a group of people | | |
| Ī | pots, dishes, etc. made from clay ⁽⁶⁾ | | |
| شقة apartment | a home that is a number of rooms in a building | | |
| get married يتزوج | become husband ⁽⁷⁾ and wife | | |
| | a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree | | |
| سلة basket | something you can use to carry or hold things | | |
| زاهي للألوان <mark>colourful</mark> | with many different colours(9) | | |

| Expressions | | | | |
|-------------|--|--|--|--|
| یشتری شقة | | | | |
| يحصل على | | | | |
| يتزوج | | | | |
| يذهب للجام | | | | |
| لديه أطفال | | | | |
| يجتاز امتم | | | | |
| يعمل بجد | | | | |
| يؤدي وظيف | | | | |
| | | | | |

| Preposit | lions |
|------------------|-------------------|
| live in | پىيش فى |
| go to | بنعب إلى |
| move to | بنتقل إلى (يعزّل) |
| take from | باخذ من |
| stay for | يقيم لمدة |
| a plan for | خطة ا |
| around the world | حول العالم |
| | |

Word Differences

(hard جاد/بجد hardly بصعوبة/تقريبًا لا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Present | | Past simple |
|---------|------|-------------|---------|------|-------------|
| know | يعرف | knew | have | يملك | had |



1) other · others · another

· other

آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم جمع بعد)

- ex. Do you meet other boys at school?
- others

المتخروز (لا يأثن بعدها اسم)

- ex. Some tourists like to visit Luxor. Others like Sharm El-Sheikh.
- another

أخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد)

ex. Mum gave me another apple.

2) see

+ v + ing مفعول + see + مفعول

يرى وصف رؤية الحدث أثناء حدوثه،

- ex. I saw a man carrying many bags.
- (مصدر بدون inf. (to مفعول + see •

- يرى وصف رؤية الحدث ككل،
- ex. I saw Habiba leave a few minutes ago.

Reading



I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important (2). I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university , I'll study maths. It's my best subject (3).

Idon't like flying $^{(4)}$, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

| Aro | bic Meaning |
|------|-------------|
| | ١- تعليم |
| | ۲- هام |
| ٠, ٠ | ۳- مادة |
| | 1-الطيران |
| | |



Presenter: Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

Rami : I really want to be an architect. I must go to university

for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass⁽²⁾ my exams⁽³⁾ if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job in another country.

like South Africa. But after a few years I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married one day, but I don't

want to live in Cairo. I prefer(5) the countryside!

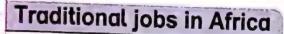
Presenter: Amira, what about you?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go

university, I'll study Science. I'd love to be a scientist! It's a reinteresting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'

get married and have children, but not for a long time for that!

Reading



Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional⁽¹⁾ jobs and skills⁽²⁾ are still important.

1. 😉

People started making pottery⁽³⁾ thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops⁽⁴⁾ or their own homes. If you go to a village in Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults⁽⁵⁾ can learn this skill.

2. 📵

It is traditional to make jewellery⁽⁶⁾ in Kenya. You can see the colourful⁽⁷⁾ jewellery in markets all over the country. Today,

some local businesses⁽⁸⁾ also use social media⁽⁹⁾ and the internet to sell jew to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues a tradition⁽¹⁰⁾ and it helps local people to earn⁽¹¹⁾ money.

3. 🙆

It is an important part of Africa's culture⁽¹²⁾ to make baskets. It is also a wownen from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lawomen who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghancountries all over the world.

Scanned with CamScanner





Arabic M



Check Up Exercises

| Choose the correct | answer from | a, b, c or d: | | WB |
|---|------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|------|
| 1 Tourists learn a lot abo | out ancient Egy | puan | when they visit Lyape d picture | |
| - InicutA | culture | MIXIUIG | picture | |
| and got to | a doctor. She i | s a good wife. | passed | |
| 2. Sard got =================================== | angry | married | passes | |
| hauld studii uoli | r lessons well. | 13 VOI | d Travelling | |
| | | | | WB |
| 4. To is to get n | noney by worki | ng. | d lose | |
| 4. To win | earn | buy | (000 | WB |
| IS ON ODITION | y to do someth | ing well. | d sky | |
| skeleton 🗓 | skill | skirt | G on 9 | |
| 1 Hà | mework E | xercises | | |
| | | | | |
| Choose the correct a | nswer from a | , b, c or u. | | |
| 1. I hope that I | my exams so t | hat I can go to u | Iniversity. | |
| 1. I hope that I | orget | (iii) pass | protect | |
| 2. Maths is my best | I think it | is so easy. | | |
| 2. Maths is my best | - bloot | object | hobby | |
| o colour s | ubject | hig company. | | |
| a Muncle finally got d/ar |) III u | c ocean | d weather | |
| apartment b jo | b · | to a scople mi | ake or repair things. | (WB) |
| is a room or | small building v | where people in | school | |
| | arket | workshop | | WB |
| shop | grown person. | | | |
| 5. A/An is a fully | | 6 baby | d kid | WB |
| o child | ull | neople is their | | WE |
| o child 6. The art, ideas, beliefs, etc. | c. of a group of | culture | 6 pottery | |
| | | | | WE |
| 7 Voursed a lot of | to make a b | eautiful basker | d squares | |
| Dokida G cke | letons | skills | Squares | MIPS |
| 8. The shop had a lot of cups | plates and a | ther | • | WB. |
| | s, plutes and | culture | d pottery | |
| 1 tradition | Cation. | | | WB |
| 9. A doctor can usually | a lot of m | loney. | en do | |
| win buy | | earn | d do | |

181



The first conditional الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية (إذا / لو If)

| Form / التحوين

المناه (إذا / لو If) في الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية بالصيغة الآتية:

If + present simple, --> ناعل + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf.

بهكن أن تأتى fi في وسط الجملة:

+ will('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. → if + present simple

ex. If Mona is quick, she will catch the bus.

= Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

ex. If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

= They won't go to the beach if it is windy tomorrow.

الحظ الأتي:

• إذا بدأت الجملة الشرطية بـ (if) فإننا نضيف فاصلة (,) قبل كتابة الجملة الثانية، بينما لا نضيف

.... الاستخدام / Usage

وستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن حدث محتمل حدوثه في المستقبل

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass the test.

.... Question / السؤال Question إـــ

' في حالة السؤال عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

If + present simple, → will + فاعل + inf....?

→ if + present simple...? Will + فاعل + Inf

ex. If you have a lot of money, will you buy a car?

ex. Will you buy a car if you have a lot of money?

No, I won't, Yes, I will,

Exercises Lessons (3) & (4)



Check Up Exercises

| Choose th | e correct answer fr | om a, b, c or d: | | |
|----------------------|---|-------------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 1- If you play | y tennis all day, you w | ill tired. | | WB |
| o are | (b) is | o be | o not | |
| 2- The teache | er will not be happy if y | your home | work. | Glydren |
| adidn't de | b doing | o don't do | dld | SB |
| 3. If the touris | ts go to Giza, they | the Pyramids. | | 30 |
| will see | seeing | saw | didn't see | SB |
| 4 If you | _ to that restaurant, yo | ou'll have a really goo | d lunch. | |
| m went | b goes | c go | going | |
| 5. If you play v | vell, you the mo | atch. | are won | |
| m wins | b will win | G WON | die won | |
| and co | orrect the underline | d words: | | |
| 2 Read and 3 | me tonight, we will to | talk about school. | (|) |
| 1- If you phone | will catch the bus. | | (|) |
| 2- If you ran, yo | ou will catch the bus. Cairo, my father <u>wou</u> | ıld get a new job. | WB (|) |
| 3- If we move to | | | | |
| | Homework | | | |
| Chasse the C | orrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | SB |
| Choose the | uy tickets, they | see the tennis mata | eh. | |
| | my ticketo, and | o not will | aren't | |
| won't | b would | | | (ME) |
| 2- If you ! | you will not understan | C Listons | U listening | |
| [a] listened | don't listen | c listens | | |
| | you go to Paris? | | | |
| | b you see | will you see | o sees | |
| o you'll see | ill, Mr Ahmed will | teach the lesson. | | |
| 4- If Mr Tarek | | c is | doesn't | |
| 0 Was | wasn't | | | WE |
| 5- If you want to se | ee the doctor, you | to wait. | | No. |
| will have | b have will | © will | won't | |
| | | | | |

| 6. I will help you w | vith your homework | you find it diff | ficult. | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----|
| although | if if | o and | o so | C |
| 7. If I visit my gran | ndparents, I t | hem a present. | | |
| o took | will take | | d takes | Q |
| 8. Lara | to drive if she stays in | the city. She'll use | _ | |
| learns | b doesn't learn | owon't learn | d learnt | Q |
| 9. If I to | university, I'll study t | o be an engineer. | | |
| go go | will go | c went | d goes | |
| 2 > Read and corre | ect the underlined | words: | | |
| | mework before seven | | e and visit you | i. |
| | | | WB(| |
| 2- If it was very ho | ot tomorrow, I will stay | j inside. | (| |
| 3. Hala will an to v | vork if she felt well to | тогтом. | (| |



Lessons 5 & 6

5B pages 61-62 WB pages 111-112

Key Vocabulary,

| | تطبيق | spend (spent) | يقضي (وقت) /ينفق (مال) |
|-----------------|--------|----------------|------------------------|
| app wations | تنبؤات | cure (d) | علاج/يعالج |
| predictions | مرض | disappear (ed) | يختفي |
| illness | الريف | design (ed) | يصمم |
| the countryside | مثير | | |
| exciting | | | • |

Vocabulary

| | | 7 | مشروع |
|------------|------------------------|---------------|-------|
| | جيتار | project | |
| guitar | لغة | spelling | هجاء |
| language | | 1 | الصحة |
| electric | كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء) | Heata | إصابة |
| robot | إنسان آلي | | مقدمة |
| | خاتمة | introduction | يقدم |
| conclusion | متفائل | introduce (d) | |
| hopeful | | book (ed) | يحجز |
| map | | | |
| completely | تمامًا | | |

| | Words & Meanings Arabic Meaning Arabic Meaning |
|------------------|---|
| app بيق | something on a priorite data. maps(1), book(2) tickets, etc. |
| الج cure | to make an injury or illness better saying or writing what you think will happen(3) in the future |
| بؤات Predictions | saying or writing what you trime to |
| exciting by | not boring |
| design ممم | to draw something that you plan to build or make |
| the countryside | the area that is outside a town or a city |
| ريف | できる 大きなない からない はない ない |

1000

Expressions

learn to drive

design a video game

يصمم لعبة فيديو

design an app

in 10 years' time

stay the same

years time

stay the same

spend time with

introduce a new idea

find a cure

يقضي وقت مع يقدم فكرة جديدة

يجد علاج

Prepositi

revise for predictions for cure for

Word Differences

cure aks

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Present | |
|---------|-------|-------------|---------|--------|
| feel | يشعر | felt | find | يجد |
| | يحافظ | kept | begin | المبدا |



• make

- make + object مفعول inf. + مفعول
 - ex. Exercises make the heart beat faster.
- make + object مفعول + adjective .
 - ex. I think technology will make our life easier.



Presenter: What are your plans(1) for the future, Hussein?

Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want

to learn to play the guitar. And before I leave school,

I want to design a video game!

Scanned with CamScanner

Arabi

Lessons 5 & 6

24 - 4

Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think

I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

presenter: Thank you, Hussein.

presenter: Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja: Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are

lots of other things I want to do first.

presenter: Tell me about them.

Khadeeja: Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language(3). I also want

to learn to drive.

presenter: And what will your life be like in 15 years' time?

Khadeeja: That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 15 years' time, I'll

have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

presenter: Thanks, Khadeeja.

Reading



My predictions(1) for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology⁽²⁾ will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps(3) for everything.

Scientists will find new cures(4) for illnesses(5) so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear⁽⁶⁾ completely.

All our cars will be electric(7). If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to leam to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots⁽⁸⁾ will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers! I think there will be a lot of exciting changes (9) in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Arabic Meaning

- ۱- تيزات
- ٢- التكنولوجيا

- ٧- كهربي
- ۸- روبوتات
- ۹- تغیرات

187



Dina:

I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills to do that. Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give some advice(1). Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.

Arabic Meaning

Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work⁽²⁾ at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university⁽³⁾. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Exercises Lessons (5) & (6)

Check Up Exercises

| > Choose the c | orrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------|
| | really Every | | | |
| evciting | b terrible | 6 boring | (d) bad | |
| Our company | works to design a ne | w that | will help people t | o book |
| | | | | -001 |
| cinema tickets | | plane | 7 radio | |
| app | b tool | | | |
| 3. I like to live in | a quite place, so I like | e to live in the | | |
| city | countryside | | arden | |
| 4. If you | ., people can't see or f | ind you. | | WB |
| m kill | 1 dislike | o disappear | disagree disagree | |
| | neans to make an inju | | • | WB |
| o break | b hurt | | d cure | |
| | Homework | xercises | | |
| Choose the co | orrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1. I will learn to | because I wa | nt to buy a car. | | |
| dive | b sleep | c ride | drive | |
| 2. I think technolo | ogy w <mark>ill our l</mark> | ives easier. | | |
| o cause | b make . | o find | d cure | |
| 3. It's better to us | ecars to kee | ep the environmer | nt clean. | |
| a big | D electric | musical | d) clean | |
| 4. "" med | ins "not boring". | | | WB |
| a Exciting | _ | Worse | 1 Long | |

| | | | Lessons 5 |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 5. I will start to | for next mo | nth's exam tomorro | W. |
| con revise | 1 advise | c realise | finish |
| 6. Could you tell us | about your | for the match? | |
| reasons | (b) predictions | o ends | d grounds |
| 7. Scientists found | new for | a dangerous disec | ISO. |
| cure cure | b doctor | c clinic | 0 Hospitat |
| 8. I think some illne | sses will | completely in the fo | uture. |
| @ kill | cure cure | disappear | d find |
| *** | gnguage | Function | 1 5 الحديث عن خططك ال |
| Talking about yo | ur future plans | مستقبلية ك المستقبلية باستخدام الآتر | يمكن الحديث عن خططا |
| | | | , |
| | I'm going | to + inf. | |
| | I want to | + inf. | |
| | I'd like to | + inf. | 1.6 |
| | | ات تعبر عن المستقبل مثل: | • ويمحن استخدام تعبير |
| tor | norrow / in years | s' time / Next | |

ex. Next year, I'd like to live in the country.

ex. In ten months' time, I'd like to design an app.

Exercises &

| Language Functions | |
|--------------------|--|
| | |

| Nabil: What are your plans for the future, Kamal? Kamal: Really, I want to design an | |
|--|-----------|
| Kamal: Realty, 1 Wall to | holidays. |
| Nabil: Why? Kamal: To help people use maps and 2 | |
| Kamal: In five years' time, I want to have a good 6 Nahil - What ich would you like to do? | |
| Kamal: I'd like to be a computer 4 | |
| Mobil : Why? Kamal : To 6 | |



Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة،

My dream job

I'd like to be a marine biologist one day! A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it. I'd like to be a marine biologist because I'm good at science and I love the ocean. I think all animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting. I'd like to be a marine biologist to go diving around coral reefs. I can test water from the ocean in the laboratory. I think my research will help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

Your plans for the future

I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I leave school, I want to design a video game! In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I really need to help find cures for dangerous diseases. I'd like to live in the countryside. I think life in the countryside is much better than the city's life. It is also quieter.

A Life in future

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting. I think our phones will be more important and we will have apps for everything. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear completely. All our cars will be electric. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities. I don't think people will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

Excel Yourself

| 1 > Choos | se the corr | ect answer from | n a, b c or d: | |
|------------|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| | | t tomorrow, | | |
| isn | 't it | b shall we | aren't we | don't we |
| 2. The n | ext exam is . | importa | nt for all of you. | |
| o spe | ecial | 6 especially | c local | locally |
| 3. I'm a g | good teacher | ?,? | | |
| o dor | n't I | aren't I | omn't I | won't I |
| 2 > Read o | and correct | the underlined | words: | |
| 1. Ahmed | had car last | year, wasn't he? | • | () |
| 2. He neve | er likes fish, | doesn't he? | | () |
| | | son, doesn't he? | | (|
| | | | | () |

neral Exercises On Unit 12?

1 Complete the following dialogue:

| 17 | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|----------------|------------------|------|
| Karim : What do | oes your father do | ? | | |
| All : He is ar | 0 | | | |
| • | oes an engineer do | 97 | | |
| | gns @ | | and engl | nes. |
| | ou like to be in the | e future? | | |
| · I'd like to | be o writer. | | | |
| Ali | | you like read | ing and writing? | |
| Karim . O | | , I read and w | rite a lot. | |
| Au | | | | |
| Karim : Best Wish | 63. | | | |
| All : Thank 61 | | | •* | |
| 2 Choose the col | | | ot of decisions. | |
| | | | | |
| interview 2. Habiba is a nurse | . She tooks | after | on on | SB |
| for 3- You want to be a | nurse, | _ you? | - 1 14 | |
| adidn'f | ISIT | c doesn't | don't | SB |
| 4-It hot | today, is it? b don't | isn't | wasn't | SB |
| o doesn't 5- You won't forget to | phone me, | | are | SB |
| 6. There were a lot of | people at the med | eting, weren't | ′ | |
| n these | there | those | | SB |
| 7- You lik | ce fish, do you? | aren't | won't | |
| o didn't | b don't | | | WB |
| 8- Sara wants to be a r | marine biologist, - | @ doesn't | aren't | |
| gisn't 9- Your grandmother | won't like fish | | | WB |
| | isn't | o don't | doesn't | |
| | | | | 4 |

| 10 is po | ots, dishes, etc. mad | e from clay. | | |
|---|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------|-------|
| Battery | Bakery | Jewellery | Pottery | W) |
| | a new job, we'll m | | | SB |
| got got | b get | will get | gets gets | 4 |
| | eople making baske | | down the road. | WB |
| [D] library | (b) restaurant | workshop | d school | |
| | an now. S | | | WB |
| a baby | thin child | kid | d adult | |
| | nt this for | | - | |
| ig jewellery | train | keyboard | d clay | |
| hungry | new that my sister fo | | | |
| | o angry | c pleased | cheerful | |
| 3 > Read and corre | ct the underlined | words: | | |
| You like playing | tennis, <u>isn't</u> you? | | (|) |
| 2. You should eat | too many cakes, sho | ould you? | WB (| , |
| 3. Laila can't cook, | can't she? | | (| ′ |
| 4. It is cold in Engl | and in winter, doesn | 't it? | WB(| • |
| | nework last night, di | | WB (| , |
| | to me when he gets | | WB(| , |
| | y people at the matc | | WB(| , |
| 8. She speaks Fre | | , | | , |
| | rsity, I'll study math | 8 | WB (|) |
| 10. If I got a good jo | | | (|) |
| | | | (|) |
| 4 ≽ Write a paragra | ph of EIGHTY (80 |) words on: | , عنه قبل الامتحان) | امجاب |
| "Y | our plans for the fu | ture" | | WB |
| | | | | ΝO |
| | | | | - |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | ***** | |





Listening \\

| Listen and choose | the correct | answer from | n a,b,c | or | d: |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|---------|----|----|
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|---------|----|----|

| 7/ | | | سؤال في أخر الكتاب | نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا ال |
|------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---|
| 4 | The speaker wo | uld like to be a/an | | VI VIII DE SERVICIONALISTO CONTROLOGICO |
| 1 | accountant | | | d student |
| | o accountant | nuise | c teacher | Stadom |
| 2. | The speaker wol | uld like to learn a | new | |
| | o idea | b language | | o program |
| 3. | The speaker wan | ts to learn to | | |
| | dive | b drive | c run | jump |
| 4 | in 15 years' time, | the speaker will g | et | |
| | o ill | b married | angry | d home |
| | | B Language | Functions \ | |
| 2 > Co | | owing dialogue: | | |
| Aya | : You visi | t some interesting | places, don't you? | |
| Marino hi | iologist : 0 | , I do | . I'm working in the | Red Sea these days. |
| | Manual Mil | hat sea animals d | o you study? | |
| Aya | ; Wow! w | nut seu unimen | iko O | |
| Marine bi | ologist : I study la | irge sea animals l | ike Ø | it? |
| Aya | : Working | as a marine biolog | ist isn't easy, 👸 - | it? |
| Marine bio | Noglet - No it isn't | I work a lot to co | ollect and record in | formation. |
| Aya | nogiat : 110, it ion | | dc | you work a day? |
| | | | | |
| | logist : I work abo | ut nine hours a do | ıy. | - heesma a marina |
| Aya | : What's you | r advice to young | people who want t | o become a marine |
| 14 | biologist? | | | |
| Marina c | | l _ h | and at school ASD | eciallu in science. |

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Comprehension

3 - Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nemo is a clownfish. It lives in the ocean. Nemo's mother doesn't live with because a shark ate it! So, Nemo and his father, Marlin, live alone in a beautiful correef. On its first day of school, Nemo was very happy to see the sea world, but he father is very worried. Marlin is afraid of sharks, and he doesn't want to leave Nemo alone. However, Nemo disobeys his father and goes after a boat, and unfortunated a man catches it! So, Nemo's father starts a journey to find its son. Nemo stays in a aquarium in Australia, where it meets new friends, but it misses its father. Nemo tree to escape from the aquarium, but it's very difficult!

| 1- Why doesn't I | Nemo's mother live | with Nemo? | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------|
| | no and its father live | | | ••••. |
| 3- Why do you th | ink the man catches | s Nemo? | | |
| | rrect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| aquarium (| 10 planetarium | c theatre | d ocean | |
| 5- Nemo feels | and tries to o | escape. cheerful | d sad | |
| 6- Marlin is Nemo a shark | 's man | ather | d mother | |
| | Vocabulary | & Structure | 11 | |
| 4 - Choose the cor | rect answer from | a, b, c or d: | | |
| 1 That good man. | to help the | old woman cross t | he road. | |
| flew | b volunteered | c refused | disagreed | |
| 2 An architect is a | person de | esigns buildings. | | |
| o what | b which | o when | d who | WB |
| 3. He will get high r | marks if he | _ harder. | | |
| studied | b studies | 6 will study | d studying | |

| 4. You will visit your aunt today, | 7 | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 4. You will visit your dank today, 2222 | can you | aren't non | | | | | |
| will you by won't you | u studu after usu k | agua school for a dogree | | | | | |
| 5. A/An is a place where yo | a stady after god te | Suppose the | | | | | |
| (S nark | gurage | univolong | | | | | |
| and mechanics asumy | anothers and mechanics assume work in the | | | | | | |
| Labore Milliancis | | | | | | | |
| workshops is often made of silver or g | gold. | SB | | | | | |
| 7 | 6 Sand | Pottery | | | | | |
| Bread Br | ark where we | a nice time. | | | | | |
| Mu family and I went to the nearby po | cured | d left | | | | | |
| 8. My family direction designed | ground th | ne world. | | | | | |
| g. I think English is the most important | aloulid a | project | | | | | |
| g. I think English | o map | Di projest | | | | | |
| o screen that Sara will get high r | marks in her exam | S. | | | | | |
| 10. I'm that Sura with g | 🥝 joyful | d hopeful | | | | | |
| - End | | | | | | | |
| 5 Read and correct the underlined was | ords: | () | | | | | |
| Read and correct TV was he? | | () | | | | | |
| 1. Hassan isn't watching TV, was he? | | () | | | | | |
| 1. Hassan isn't watering 2. Mr Ali is the man which we all like. 2. Mr Ali is the man would mee | t a lot of tourists. | (| | | | | |
| . 11 Abo milistrativi 9- | | (| | | | | |
| Vallare twelve years | | | | | | | |
| 4. You die Writing | 3/1 | | | | | | |
| | rde on' | (مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان) | | | | | |
| Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) wor | rus on. | | | | | | |
| "Life in the futur | re" | 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 4 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |
| *************************************** | | | | | | | |

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 1

Key Vocabulary,,

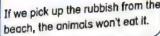
| | حزين | shower | plea |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------|
| sad | يلتقط | can | صفيح |
| pick up technology | التكنولوچيا | souvenir التكن | نذكارية |
| | جمعية خيرية | deronduticut engineer | س طیران |
| charity | ناعم / أملس | | |
| soft | | | |

Reading











we'll save water.







Reading



In the past, many people had traditional(1) jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they? For example, an aeronautical engineer(2) is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job,

Arabic Meaning

٣- التكولوج

but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology⁽³⁾, perhaps you will design drones. Many people think that drones will carry our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, won't it?



: Here are the boxes for the recycling project. Malak Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

: Great! So which box does this bottle go into? Hala

: What is it made of -plastic or glass? Malak

: It's made of plastic. Hala

: OK, it goes into the yellow box. Malak

: Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass. Hala

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

: What about this magazine? It's made of paper. Hala

Malak : It goes into the red box.

: Where can I put this can? Hala

Malak: If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

: Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box. Hala

Malak : What's left?

: Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak: We're not going to recycle the clothes - but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

tala : The orange box ... OK.

Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.





1- Guessing something

Boy : I'm not sure what this souvenir(1) made of. Is it plastic or

stone?

2- Giving instructions in order

Man : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft⁽²⁾. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should

you do? Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3- Checking information

Woman: Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4- Talking about future plans

Girl : Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity⁽³⁾.





1 > Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

| | ناب | بهذا السؤال في آخر الكن | نص الاستماء الخاص |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1. Ras Mohammed is a/ | an_ | | and the same of th |
| charity 2. Many people go | nature reserve | oforest | d ocean |
| 3. Ras Mohammed rese | walking erve is famous for | kayaking | d diving |
| 4. People mustn't give _ | reers to any | | d knives |
| | water | © reefs | 6 food |

Arabic Mean



B Language Functions

| | 9-3-90 | allottono , | |
|---|--|--|-------------------------|
| 2 / Co | mplete the following dialogue: | | |
| Aya Nada Aya Nada Aya Nada Aya Nada | : Did you watch yesterday prograted: No, what was it about? : It was about the dangers to our : So. How can we solve this 2 : They said we should 3 : What else did they say? : They said we should have shorted: It's useful information. | rul to save | bbish. water. |
| | the following and answer the question of the problem in parks and streets. It is a world are filling up with trash. It is | uestions: | |
| ter. Some also throw astic. The p y. This can n carry ger as trash. Po | t just a problem in parks and streets. If the world are filling up with trash. It is boats and ships sailors throw their in into rivers. The biggest problem a plastic products can stay for a long timbe harmful to birds and other animal ms that make people sick. We should exple can do voluntary work to clean the following questions: In plastic be bad for people? | bout seas trash is that most of me until they are about the size Is that live on the shore. Also, to divide the people about the effect | f it is of a rash |
| | the biggest problem about seas tras | h? | = |
| 3. How do | you think people can do to clean up | seas? | |
| | the correct answer from a, b, c or d | | • • • |
| | the biggest around the wo | | |
| o rivers | problem | ches des | |
| stay | onfor a long time. © clea | n d throw | |
| 6 Trash ca | n be to birds and other anir | mals that live on the shore. | |
| 0 300q | (a) clean (b) harm | nful nice | |

Vocabulary & Structure

| 4 > Choose the correct answer from a | ı, b, c or d: | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-----|--|--|
| 1- You shouldn't have long hot shares b showers | charities | d changes | SB | | |
| | c souvenir | d engineer | WB | | |
| ders 5 | c get | d getting | WB | | |
| 4- An octopus can swim fast,? a can't it b will it 5- There doctors and dentists i | C Can it | d does it | | | |
| m dre | C WILL DC | d have | WB | | |
| 6- I'm very I think I will go to b fine healthy 7- Don't put that bottle in the bin, you can | I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I | d tired | | | |
| a recycle | nimals to live in. | d ride | | | |
| population benvironment population benvironment | ple's | d station d teeth | | | |
| are made of cotton or wool. | heads Gates | d roofs | | | |
| 5 Read and correct the underlined words: 1. Vi. didn't follow the students, they make mistakes. | | | | | |
| 2. That's the woman which found my wallet. 3. You mustn't be careful when you hold a hot pan. 4. You don't like wearing gloves, don't you? | | | | | |
| Writing | | | | | |
| 6 > Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) wo | rds on: a storu" | | SB | | |
| "A character you tiked in the | | | | | |
| | | | 475 | | |

Bit Bit New Hello!

Key to Exercises First Year Preparatory إجابات كتاب الشرح الفصل الدراسي الثاني



التوزيع ،

١٠ شارع كامل صدقى - الفجالة القاهرة ت: ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥

للاستعلام وابداء الأراء والإقتراحات الإدارة ، تليفون ، ۲۰۸۰۱۰۲



bleb.



Lessons 1&2

Vocabulary p. 14 / 15

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. stadium
- 2. d. funfair
- 3. b. museum
- 4. d. nervous
- 5. b. shopping

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. aguarium
- 2. d. wheel
- 3. a. Dolphins
- 4. b. football stadium
- 5. c. bowling alley
- 6. d. sports centre
- 7. c. planetarium
- 8. a. canteen
- 9. d. exhibition
- 10. d. stars
- 11. b. have
- 12. c. beach
- 13. b. restaurant



Grammar p. 17/ 18

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. last
- 2. b. Yesterday
- 3. d. ago
- 4. a. yesterday
- 5. b. went
- 6. c. Yesterdau

2. Read and correct

- 1. am / was
- 2. Tomorrow / Yesterdau
- 3. move / moved

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. last
- 2. a. last
- 3. b. did
- 4. c. yesterday
- 5. a. last
- 6. d. bought
- 7. a. ago
- 8. b. last
- 9. c. had
- 10. a. Were

2. Read and correct

- 1. have / had
- 2. age / ago
- 3. driving / drove
- ride / rode

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary p. 22

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. sailor
- 2. d. alone
- 3. b. sank
- 4. d. terrible
- 5. a. coconuts

Homework exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. nearby
- 2. c. alone
- 3. a. jungle
- 4. b. coconuts
- 5. c. terrible
- 6. d. sailor
- 7. g. on
- 8. d. sink

- 9. b. caves

- 10. b. musician

Grammar p. 24/ 25

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. is
- 2. a. did
- 3. b. come
- 4. c. am
- 5. d. can
- 6. c. Do
- 7. b. did

- 1. is / was
- 2. have / had
- 3. Can / Could

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. went
- 2. d. haven't
- 3. d. Have
- 4. c. has
- 5. b. Can
- 6. b. What
- 7. b. Do
- 8. a. Will

2. Read and correct

- 1. do / does
- 2. Do / Are
- 3. What / How

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 29 / 30

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. barbecue
- 2. a. concert
- 3. c. windu
- 4. a. remember
- 5. d. loud

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. closed
- 2. d. barbecues
- 3. b. Then
- 4. d. concert
- 5. c. drove
- 6. a. ticket
- 7. b. hotels
- 8. d. tired
- 9. a. on
- 10. a. with

Language Functions p. 30

- Complete the following dialogue

- 1. nice
- 2. did
- 3. When
- 4. because / as
- 5. Although

Excel yourself

1- Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. reallu
- 2. b. make
- 3. a. all
- 4. b. had
- 5. b. will

2. Read and correct

- 1. tired / tiring
- 2. to work / working

General Exercises (p. 32 - 33)

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. match
- 2. Who
- 3. Was
- 4 win
- 5. funfair

2 Choose the correct

1. b. museum

5. d. haircut

- 2. c. travelled
- 3. d. didn't come 4. b. aquarium
 - 6. b. went
- 7. b. for
- 8. a. can
- 9. b. Does
- 10. d. writer
- 11. a. because
- 12. c. because
- 13. b. Although
- 14. d. Although
- 15. c. Although

3. Read and correct

- 1. tomorrow / yesterday
- 2. are / were
- 3. watch / watched
- 4. am / was
- 5. Are / Do
- 6. Has / Have

Test 1 on Unit 7 p. 34 / 36

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. do
- 2. did
- 3. got
- 4. Can
- 5. uou

4. Choose the correct

- 1. c. coconut
- 2. b. How
- 3. b. sinks
- 4. c. traditional
- 5. a. Have
- 6. d. sailor
- 7. b. ago
- 8. a. Rock
- 9. d. planetarium 10. d. Last

- 1. did / do
- 2. go / went

- 3. Did / Can
- 4. tomorrow / yesterday



Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 41 / 42

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. Bridge
- 2. a. Tower
- 3. b. Pyramid
- 4. a. countru
- 5. c. Tunnel

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. citu
- 2. b. tower
- 3. d. amazing
- 4. d. world
- 5. b. deep
- 6. b. tunnel
- 7. c. bridge
- 8. a. How
- 9. d. banks

Language Functions p. 43

- Complete the following dialogue

- 1. What
- 2. Puramids
- 3. second
- 4. temple
- 5. old

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. cheap
- 2. b. achievements
- 3. c. ugly
- 4. d. sunset
- 5. a. beautiful

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. suspension 2. b. expensive
- 3. a. skating

- 4. d. Insects
- 5. d. proud
- 6. d. dangerous
- 7. b. climbing
- 8. b. view
- 9. c. bee
- 10. a. Sunset

Lessons 2 & 3

Grammar p. 50 / 51

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. higher
- 2. b. taller
- 3. a. noisier
- 4. b. bigger
- 5. d. than

2. Read and correct

- 1. most / more
- 2. big / bigger
- 3. most / the most
- 4. clever / the cleverest

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. nearer
- 2. d. the tallest
- 3. a. faster
- 4. c. better
- 5. b. more difficult
- 6. b. happier
- 7. c. the best
- 8. d. older
- 9. b. the biggest
- 10. a. taller

2. Read and correct

- 1. more high / higher
- 2. happy / happiest
- 3. longest / longer
- 4. badder / better

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Vocabulary

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. space
- 2. b. treasures
- 3. d. entrance
- 4. b. on
- 5. d. fountain

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. valuable
- 2. b. park
- 3. d. to
- 4. d. treasures
- 5. b. space
- 6. a. competition
- 7. c. columns
- 8. a. collection
- 9. a. Valley
- 10. c. public

Lessons 4,5 & 6



p. 58

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. because
- 2. b. but
- 3. a. because
- 4. d. but

2. Read and correct

- 1. because / but
- 2. and / but
- 3. and / because

Language Functions p. 59/60

3. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. opinion
- 2. Because
- 3. the most
- 4. way
- 5. with

Excel yourself p. 60

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. for
- 2. a. fewer
- 3. a. best
- 4. d. for

2. Read and correct

- 1. Although / But
- 2. circle / square

General Exercises (p. 61-62)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. What / Which
- 2. Temple
- 3. Egyptian
- 4. long
- 5. Thank

2. Choose the correct

- 1. a. wide
- 2. a. more expensive

3. c. crowded

- 4. b. more modern
- 5. a. most popular
- 6. d. worst
- 7. b. further
- 8. c. centre
- 9. b. quiet
- 10. c. protects
- 11. c. disagreed
- 12. c. at
- 13. a. like
- 14. b. about
- 15. a. same
- 16. d. further
- 17. b. empty

3. Read and correct

- 1. strong / stronger
- 2. most careful / more careful
- 3. the better / the best
- 4. far / further
- 5. at / on
- 6. road / way

Test 2 an unit 8 p. 64 / 86

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Where
- 2. in
- 3. interesting
- 4. see
- 5. objects

4. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. low
- 2. a. narrow
- 3. b. noisu
- 4. a. noisier
- 5. b. bridges
- 6. b. more crowded
- 7. a. quiet
- 8. b. nicer
- 9. c. Sunset
- 10. c. because

- 1. little / less
- 2. best / better
- 3. more / best
- the more beautiful / the most beautiful



Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 72

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. trekking
- 2. b. Mountain biking
- 3. c. kayaking
- 4. d. windsurfing 5. c. looks

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. climbing
- 2. a. diving
- 3. b. zip lining
- 4. a. sailing
- 5. d. try
- 6. c. trekking
- 7. a. journey
- 8. c. down
- 9. a. at
- 10. c. fun
- - Grammar p. 75/76

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. Is
- 2. a. will go
- 3. a. is going
- 4. d. going
- 5. a. not going to

2. Read and correct

- 1. gone / going
- 2. is going to / isn't going to
- 3. go / going

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. is going to
- 2. a. will buy
- 3. b. next
- 4. a. Are
- 5. a. is going to 6. c. do
- 7. c. are you

2. Read and correct

- 1. yesterday / tomorrow
- 2. is / gre
- 3. is going to / isn't going to
- 4. Are / Is

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary p. 81 / 82

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. sunnu
- 2. c. clouds
- 3. a. weather 4. a. snow
- 5. b. Bedouin
- 6. b. third

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. wet
- 2. c. on
- 3. b. fog
- 4. d. protect
- 5. c. warm
- 6. b. foggy
- 7. a. guide
- 8. d. date
- 9. c. tent
- 10. c. took

Grammar p. 84 / 85

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. themselves
- 2. b. ourselves
- 3. c. myself
- 4. a. herself
- 5. a. herself

2. Read and correct

- 1. yourself / yourselves
- 2. itself / themselves
- 3. herself / himself

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. himself
- 2. c. myself
- 3. b. herself
- 4. b. yourself
- 5. a. ourselves
- 6. c. herself
- 7. b. themselves
- 8. a. themselves

- 1. muself / yourself
- 2. himself / herself
- 3. himself / yourself
- 4. herself / itself

Language Functions p.86

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. holiday
- 2. go
- 3. windu
- 4. think
- 5. sport / hobby

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Vocabulary

p. 91

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. suggestion 2. c. form
- 3. c. to play
- 4. d. meeting
- 5. a. challenge

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. about
- 2. c. email
- 3. c. play
- 4. b. idea
- 5. b. advantages 6. a. famous
- 7. b. cousin
- 8. a. lines
- 9. b. the

- 10. d. made

Language Functions p. 92

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. go / try
- 2. dangerous
- 3. about
- 4. Let's
- 5. idea

Excel yourself

p. 93

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. to
- 2. a. disadvantages

2. Read and correct

- 1. lonely / alone
- 2. happy / hobby

General Exercises (p. 95-96)

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. don't
- 2. rather
- 3. playing
- 4. play
- 5. idea

2. Choose the correct

- 1. a. is going to 2. c. Are
- 3. a. tent
- 4. a. yourself
- 6. b. ourselves
- 5. a. windu 7. a. wind
- 8. b. responded
- 9. a. Shall
- 10. c. join
- 11. a. home
- 12. b. by
- 13. c. quite
- 14. c. letters
- 15. a. shall

3. Read and correct

- 1. am going to / will
- 2. yourself / yourselves
- 3. is going to / isn't going to
- 4. himself / herself
- 5. sleeping / sleep
- 6. herself / himself

Test 3 on unit 9 p. 97 / 99

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. travelled
- 2. trekking
- 3. weather
- 4. yourselves
- 5. take

3. Choose the correct

- 1. b. journey
- 2. a. go
- 3. b. guide
- 4. c. hurt
- 5. b. himself
- 6. c. themselves
- 7. a. lining
- 8. d. adventure
- 9. c. across
- 10. a. going to

- 1. yourselves / ourselves
- 2. carried / carry
- 3. muself / yourself
- 4. herself / himself

Test 4 on Revision C 8 p. 103 / 105

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. idea
- 2. went
- 3. did
- 4. story
- going

3. Choose the correct

- 1. b. took
- 2. c. because
- 3. b. competition 4. c. himself 5. a. canteen
 - 6. d. scaru
- 7. b. view
- 8. a. after
- 9. c. harbour
- 10. a. going to

4. Read and correct

- 1. largest / larger
- 2. gone / going
- 3. ourselves / myself
- 4. Do / Did



lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary p. 110 / 111

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. glass
- 2. c. oven
- 3. b. metal.
- 4. a. roof
- 5. c. round

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. material
- 2. d. cushion
- 3. b. colour
- 4. a. wool
- 5. a. ancient
- 6. c. paint
- 7. a. stone
- 9. b. tap
- 8. d. called 10. a. curtains

Grammar | p. 113 / 114

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. made
- 2. d. are
- 3. d. are
- 4. c. weren't anu
- 5. b. weren't

2. Read and correct

- 1. some / anu
- 2. isn't / gren't
- 3. makina / made

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. of
- 2. a. weren't
- 3. b. is
- 4. d. aren't made
- 5. c. of
- 6. a. some
- 7. a. are made of 8. b. Are
- 9. a. is made
- 10. d. of

10. Read and correct

- 1. are / is
- 2. from / of
- 3. some / any
- 4. is / are

lessons 3

Vocabulary p. 118 / 119

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1. solar
- 2. robots
- 3. electricitu
- 4. driverless
- 5. electric

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. produce
- 2. rockets
- 3. ordinaru
- 4. drives
- 5. Robots
- 6. turbines
- 7. drone
- 8. for

- architect
- 10. moon

Grammar \

p. 120

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. will go
- 2. b. will
- 3. a. won't
- 4. c. will
- b. will use

- 1. having / have
- 2. last / next
- 3. Would / Will

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. Will
- 2. a. won't
- 3. c. won't ao
- 4. c. tomorrow
- 5. a. will
- 6. c. will
- 7. a. will

2. Read and correct

- 1. win / will win
- 2. past / future
- 3. is / will
- 4. helping / help

lessons 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 126

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. Space
- 2. c. Warm
- 3. d. shape
- 4. a. earthquake
- 5. d. imagination

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. draw
- 2. g. space
- 3. c. keep
- 4. c. out
- 5. b. start
- 6. d. for
- 7. a. easier
- 8. c. warm
- 9. b. triangle

Excel yourself (

p. 127

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. traditional
- 2. b. home
- 3. d. warm

2. Read and correct

- 1. want / won't
- 2. to / into

General Exercises (p. 128-130)

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. future
- 2. electric
- 3. agree
- 4. will
- 5. live

2. Choose the correct

- 1. d. is
- 2. d. Tous
- 3. c. weren't
- 4. a. glass
- 5. b. Is
- 6. a. will teach
- 7. d. finish
- 8. a. under
- 9. c. will
- 10. c. printers
- 11. c. roof
- 12. a. oven
- 13. b. panels
- 14. a. rectangular
- 15. c. space

3. Read and correct

- 1. is / are
- 2. was / wasn't
- 3. When / What
- 4. are / will
- 5. past / future
- 6. are / will

Test 5 on unit 10 p. 130 /132

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. made
- 2. is
- 3. leather
- 4. sure
- 5. Yes

4. Choose the correct

- 1. d. weren't
- 2. b. Robots
- 3. c. circular
- 4. a. designed
- 5. c. electric
- 6. b. be
- 7. d. leather
- 8. a. bricks
- 9. b. earthquake
- 10. c. made of

- 1. Are / Were
- 2. are / will
- 3. making / made
- 4. some / anu



Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary p. 136/137

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. stinarau
- 2. b. shell
- 3. c. poisonous
- 4. a. ocean
- 5. d. octopus

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. stings
- 2. d. flat
- 3. a. ocean
- 4. c. shark
- 5. b. from
- 6. c. in
- 7. b. coral reefs 8. c. shells
- 9. a. tail
- 10. d. protect

Grammar p. 139/140

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. stings
- 2. d. knows
- 3. b. If
- 4. c. when
- 5. a. don't get

2. Read and correct

- 1. where / when
- 2. didn't / don't
- 3. be / is
- 4. was / is

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. When
- 2. d. get
- 3. c. am
- 4. b. punishes
- 5. a. is
- 6. c. go
- 7. b. forget
- 8. d. feel
- 9. a. watches

2. Read and correct

- 1. was / am
- 2. answered / answer

- 3. What / When
- 4. travel / travels
- 5. couldn't / don't can't

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary p. 144/145

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. environment
- 2. d. recycle
- 3. c. planet
- 4. b. throw away
- 5. a. shares

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. get rid
- 2. c. plastic
- 3. a. die
- 4. b. environment
- 5. a. planets
- 6. d. rubbish 8. a. makes
- 7. c. reserve 9. b. with
- 10. a. turns
- 11. b. recycle

Grammar p. 147/148

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. must
- 2. d. mustn't
- 3. b. mustn't
- 4. c. mustn't
- 5. a. should

2. Read and correct

- 1. studuina / studu
- 2. to make / make

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. must
- 2. c. must
- 3. b. mustn't
- 4. d. mustn't
- 5. a. should

- 1. I should / should I
- 2. shouldn't / should
- 3. must / mustn't
- 4. should / shouldn't

Units Answers

Lessons 4,5 & 6

✓ Vocabulary p. 153/154

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. around
- 2. b. soil
- 3. a. hole
- 4. b. respect
- 5. d. seed

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. fishermen
- 2. b. respect
- 3. c. worried
- 4. a. weak
- 5. d. skeleton
- 6. b. pot
- 7. c. snacks
- 8. b. headphones
- 9. c. cover
- 10. c. soil

Language Functions p. 155

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. First
- 2. Second
- 3. Then
- 4. Next
- 5. Finally

Excel yourself (p. 155-156)

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. loses
- 2. c. rid
- 3. d. wasting

2. Read and correct

- 1. Ahmed must / must Ahmed
- shouldn't to / shouldn't
- 3. will watch / watch

General Exercises p. 157-158

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. title
- 2. fisherman
- 3. help
- 4. end
- 5. ate

2. Choose the correct

- 1. d. When
- 2. d. get
- 3. d. dangerous
- 4. c. poisonous
- 5. b. flat
- 6. c. sting
- 7. a. When
- 8. c. lines
- 9. c. famous
- 10. a. diving
- 11. d. careful
- 12. b. took
- 13. b. tails
- 14. c. whale
- 15. a. environment

4. Read and correct

- 1. woke / wake
- 2. didn't / don't
- 3. kept / keep
- 4. laughed / laugh
- 5. are / be
- 6. didn't / don't

Test 6 on unit 11 p. 159/ 161

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. Sure
- 2. shark
- 3. Because
- 4. when / if
- 5. from

4. Choose the correct

- 1. b. rubbish
- 2. c. skeleton
- 3. b. fisherman
- 4. b. recycle
- 5. c. line
- 6. d. gloves
- 7. a. rubbish
- 8. c. boils
- 9. d. mustn't
- 10. c. feels

- 1. knew / know
- 2. should / shouldn't
- 3. mustn't / must
- 4. drank / drink

Unit (12)

Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 165/166

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. accountant
- 2. b. computer programmer
- 3. d. photographer
- 4. b. scientist
- 5. b. architect

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. footballer
- 2. d. businessman
- 3. b. dentist
- 4. a. writer
- 5. b. pilot
- 6. c. machine
- 7. c. engineer
- 8. d. engine
- 9. d. meeting
- 10. b. businesswoman

Grammar p. 167/168

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. who
- 2. b. which
- 3. a. who
- 4. d. whose
- 5. d. who

2. Read and correct

- 1. when / who
- 2. who / which
- 3. where / who

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. which
- 2. b. who
- 3. c. who
- 4. b. which
- 5. d. who
- 6. c. who
- 7. a. when
- 8. a.who
- 9. b. who
- 10. c. who

2. Read and correct

- 1. which / where
- 2. when / who
- 3. where / who

Lesson 2

▼ Vocabulary p. 172/173

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. terrible
- 2. c. results
- 3. b. tests
- 4. d.ocean
- 5. c. interesting

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. marine biologist
- 2. c. at
- 3. a. result
- 4. a. diving
- 5. c. did
- 6. a. laboratory
- 7. b. research
- 8. c. terrible
- 9. b. reefs
- 10. b. weather



Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. isn't
- 2. c. does he
- 3. b. don't you
- 4. c. doesn't
- 5. c. gren't

2. Read and correct

- 1. aren't / are
- 2. don't / aren't
- 3. are / do

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. don't
- 2. c. isn't
- 3. b. are
- 4. c. doesn't
- 5. a. can he
- 6. d. isn't it
- 7. c. does he
- 8. d. aren't they
- 9. c. can't it
- 10. b. doesn't he

Units Answers

2. Read and correct

- 1. wasn't / isn't
- 2. she / he
- 3. didn't / doesn't

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary

p. 181

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. culture
- 2. c. married
- 3. a. Education
- 4. b. earn
- 5. b. skill

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. pass
- 2. b. subject
- 3. b. job
- 4. c. workshop
- 5. b. adult
- 6. c. culture
- 7. c. skills
- 8. d. potteru
- 9. c. earn

Grammar p. 183/184

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. c. be
- 2. c. don't do
- 3. a. will see
- 4. c. go
- 5. b. will win

2. Read and correct

- 1. to talk / talk
- 2. ran / run
- 3. would / will

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. won't
- 2. b. don't listen
- 3. c. will you see 4. c. is
- 5. a. will have
- 6. b. if
- 7. b. will take
- 8. c. won't learn 9. a. go

2. Read and correct

- 1. came / come
- 2. was / is
- 3. felt / feels

Lessons 5 & 6

▼ Vocabulary p. 188/189

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. a. exciting
- 2. a. app
- 3. b. countryside
- 4. c. disappear
- 5. d. cure

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. d. drive
- 2. b. make
- 3. b. electric
- 4. a. Exciting
- 5. a. revise
- 6. b. predictions
- 7. a. cure
- 8. c. disappear

Language Functions p. 189

- Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. app
- 2. book
- 3. job
- 4. programmer
- 5. design

Excel yourself

p. 190

1. Choose the correct answer

- 1. b. shall we
- 2. b. especially
- 3. b. gren't I

2. Read and correct

- 1. wasn't / didn't
- 2. doesn't / does
- 3. doesn't / didn't

General Exercises (p. 191/192)

1. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. engineer
- 2. machines
- 3. Do
- 4. Yes
- 5. you

2. Choose the correct

- 1. b. meeting
- 2. c. after
- 3. d. don't
- 4. c. isn't
- 5. a. will
- 6. b. there
- 7. b. don't
- 8. c. doesn't
- 9. d. doesn't
- 10. d. Pottery
- 11. d. gets
- 12. c. workshop
- 13. d. adult
- 14. a. jewellery
- 15. b. angry

3. Read and correct

- 1. isn't / don't
- 2. should / shouldn't
- 3. can't / can
- 4. doesn't / isn't
- 5. did / didn't
- 6. will / won't
- 7. were / weren't
- 8. speaks / doesn't speak
- 9. went / go
- 10. got / get

Test 7 on unit 12 p. 193/195

2. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. Yes
- 2. whales
- 3. is
- 4. long
- 5. should

4. Choose the correct

- 1. b. volunteered
- 2. d. who
- 3. b. studies
- 4. b. won't you
- 5. d. university
- 6. a. workshops
- 7. b. Jewellery
- 8. a. spent
- 9. b. language
- 10. d. hopeful

5. Read and correct

- 1. was \ is
- 2. which \ who
- 3. would \ will
- 4. are \ aren't

Test 8 on Review (D) p. 198 / 200

3. Complete the following dialogue

- 1. planet
- 2. problem
- 3. recycle
- 4. showers
- 5. Yes

4. Choose the correct

- 1. b. showers
- 2. a. reserve
- 3. c. get
- 4. a. can't it
- 5. b. were
- 6. d. tired
- 7. a. recycle
- 8. b. environment
- 9. d. teeth
- 10. b. Cushions

- 1. didn't / don't
- 2. which / who
- 3. mustn't / must
- 4. don't / do